Table of Contents

Introduction
Useful Expressions
Lesson 1: Class 1 -umu -aba
Lesson 2: Ni and Si
Lesson 3: Possessive Adjective
Lesson 4: Class 2 umu- imi-
Lesson 5: Mu and Ku
Lesson 6: Possessive Particle
Lesson 7: Class 3 in- in-
Lesson 8: Adjectives
Lesson 9: Adjectives (cont.)
Lesson 10: Review
Lesson 11: Class 3 (cont.)
Lesson 12: Verb -ri
Lesson 13: Class 4 iki- ibi-
Lesson 14: Class 4 (continued)
Lesson 15: Special Uses of Class 4
Lesson 16: -ra Present Tense of a Verb
Lesson 17: Negative of the -ra Present
Lesson 18: Class 5 i- ama-
Lesson 19: Class 5 (cont.)
Lesson 20: Review
Lesson 21: Verb -fite
Lesson 22: Infinitive and Imperative
Lesson 23: Class 6 uru- in-
Lesson 24: Class 6 (cont.)
Lesson 25: Prefixless Present Tense
Lesson 26: Class 7 aka- utu-
Lesson 27: Class 8 ubu- ama-
Lesson 28: Class 8 (cont.)
Lesson 29: Future Tense
Lesson 30: Review
Lesson 31: Negative of Future Tense
Lesson 32: Class 9 uku- ama-
Lesson 33: Class 10 aha-
Lesson 34: Chart of the Classes
Lesson 35: Vowel-stem Verbs
Lesson 36: Far Future and Present Negative of Vowel-stem Verbs
Lesson 37: Cardinal Numbers 1-10
Lesson 38: Higher Numbers
Lesson 39: -ngahe? How many?
Lesson 40: Review
Lesson 41: -ose - all, every
Lesson 42: "To wash"
Lesson 43: -ndi - other
Lesson 44: Some Verbs
Lesson 45: Verb -zi - to know
Lesson 46: Adjective Chart
Lesson 47: Word Order
Lesson 48: Personal Pronouns
Lesson 49: Review
Lesson 50: Reading Lesson
Lesson 51: Ordinary Past Tense
Lesson 52: Rules for Past Endings
Lesson 53: Past Verb Endings
Lesson 54: Ordinary Past (continued)
Lesson 55: Negative of Ordinary Past
Lesson 56: Past of -ri; -ga tense
Lesson 57: Object Pronouns
Lesson 58: Object Pronouns (continued)
Lesson 59: Object Pronouns with Vowel-stem Verbs
Lesson 60: Review
Lesson 61: Ordinal Numerals, -ombi
Lesson 62: Months, Days of Week, Telling Time
Lesson 63: Some Household Items
Lesson 64: Stative Voice
Lesson 65: -o with the Infinitive
Lesson 66: Imperative with the Subjunctive
Lesson 67: Subjunctive
Lesson 68: How to Say "Stop" and "Wait"
Lesson 69: Possessive Particle with a changed to o
Lesson 70: Review
Lesson 71: Far Past Tense
Lesson 72: Negative of Far Past
Lesson 73: Father and Mother
Lesson 74: Brother and Sister
Lesson 75: Immediate Past
Lesson 76: Possessive Adjectives
Lesson 77: Possessive Adjectives (continued)
Lesson 78: Causative Verbs
Lesson 79: Causatives (continued)
Lesson 80: Objects with Causatives
Lesson 81: Review
Lesson 82: Gutya, Gutyo
Lesson 83: Passive Verbs
Lesson 84: Past of Passives
Lesson 85: Passives of Monosyllabic Verbs
Lesson 86: Demonstrative Adjectives
Lesson 87: Demonstratives (continued)
Lesson 88: Demonstratives (continued)
Lesson 89: Not Yet Tense
Lesson 90: Review
Lesson 91: Dependent Clauses
Lesson 92: Dependent Not-Yet Tense
Lesson 93: Demonstrative Pronouns -kwiriye, -rinda, -gomba
Lesson 94: Relative Clauses
Lesson 95: Relative Clauses With no Noun Antecedent
Lesson 96: Pronoun Nde?
Lesson 97: Adjective -he?
Lesson 98: Prepositional Form of Verb
Lesson 99: Uses of Prepositional Form
Lesson 100: Review
Lesson 101: Reading Lesson
Lesson 102: Miscellaneous Words
Lesson 103: Reflexive Verbs
Lesson 104: Uses of Nta
Lesson 105: Further Notes on Nta
Lesson 106: Reciprocal Form of Verb
Lesson 107: Associative Verbs
Lesson 108: Adverb -te?, Comparisons
Lesson 109: How to Say "Why?"
Lesson 100: Review
Lesson 111: How to Say "Some", The Conditional
Lesson 112: Adjectives Expressed By Verbs
Lesson 113: Reduplicated Verbs
Lesson 114: Quotations, Direct and Indirect
Lesson 115: Prepositional Suffixes
Lesson 116: Ki and Umuki
Lesson 117: Ka Tense
Lesson 118: Some Adverbs; The -racya- Tense
Lesson 119: More Adverbs
Lesson 120: Miscellaneous Expressions
Lesson 121: More Miscellaneous Expressions
Lesson 122: Summary of Tenses
Lesson 123: The Narrative Tenses
Lesson 124: Narrative Continued
Lesson 125: Review Continued
Kinyarwanda Lessons

Betty Ellen Cox and Gakuba Faustin

Kinyarwanda lessons

Kinyarwanda is a rich language with many words having similar meaning, yet fine shades of thought. Two words may be translated by the same English words and yet they may not be used interchangeably. So strive to ferret out the exact meaning of words. Also, remember that each Kinyarwanda word does not have an exact English equivalent, and likewise, do not expect to find a Kinyarwanda equivalent for each English word.

Listen carefully even when you do not understand. Learn your pronunciation from an African, not a European. From the beginning, spend time daily with an African, reading or trying simple conversation, with him (her) correcting you. Kinyarwanda is a tonal language, which means that variations of pitch of voice, as well as length of syllables, will completely change the meaning.

Pronunciation

A. The vowels:
   a is broad as in far
   e is almost like a in hay
   i is almost like ee in bee
   o is almost like o in obey
   u is like oo in food

B. The consonants:
   d, f, g, h, k, m, n, p, s, t, v, w are pronounced practically the same as in English
   b has a very soft sound with the lips barely touching, unless it is preceded by m when it is quite hard. It does not have the rather explosive quality that it has in English.
   c always has the sound of ch as in church.
   j has a very soft sound, like z in azure.
   l is used mainly in words of foreign origin. However, in many books where one might expect ri, li is written. But the sound is that same as for r (see below).
   r has a slight trill sound, as if you tried to say d, l, and r at the same time. The tongue should just flip against the roof of the mouth.
   y as in you. (In combination with other consonants, see below). It is never a vowel like y in baby or by.
   z as in zone
   bw is pronounced bg, and even written bg in some older books. Be careful not to put a vowel sound between these two letters.
   nn When this occurs in a past stem it is pronounced rather as if there were a slight i after the n's. It has been described as ning (as in sing). This should be practiced many times with an African.
   rw is pronounced as if there were a soft g between the r and w.
   ry also has a slight g sound between the r and y, but not very strong.
   ty is difficult to describe. It must be learned from an African.
   sw or sy -- there is a slight k sound between the letters.
   by, cy, dy, jy, shy -- these are all special sounds which must be learned from an African.
   q and x do not exist in Kinyarwanda.
These lessons have been prepared in view to a person's spending a day on each lesson. Some lessons may require more than a day's study. The lessons are only a guide to study. You will learn many words that are not included here.

**Some Useful Expressions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rwandan Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mwaramutesho</td>
<td>Good morning. (To someone you see nearly every day. Used up until noon, or in some cases only until 10:00.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mwiriweho. (or, Mwiriwe.)</td>
<td>Hello. (Used from noon on.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murahö?</td>
<td>Hello. (To someone you see rarely, or haven't seen for a long time, perhaps have never seen before.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amakuru?</td>
<td>What's the news? (Equivalent of our: How are you?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni meza.</td>
<td>Good (news). (Equivalent of: Fine.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muririrweho.</td>
<td>Good-bye. (Used early in the day - through early afternoon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muraramukeho.</td>
<td>Goodnight. (Used any time after 3:00 p.m., if you expect to see the person the next day or soon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murabeho.</td>
<td>Goodbye. (When you do not expect to see the person again soon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yee, Yego.</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oya.</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murakoze (cyane).</td>
<td>Thank you (very much).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ndagushimiye.</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urashaka iki?</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iki ni iki?</td>
<td>What is this?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uruturuka he?</td>
<td>Where do you come from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urajya he?</td>
<td>Where are you going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uragana he?</td>
<td>Where are you going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ongera.</td>
<td>Do it (or say it) again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rekeraho.</td>
<td>Stop, that's enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B'uretse!</td>
<td>Wait! Stop!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerageza.</td>
<td>Try.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urakora iki?</td>
<td>What are you doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinumva.</td>
<td>I don't understand (hear).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mfasha.</td>
<td>Help me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngwino.</td>
<td>Come here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Igitabo kiri he?</td>
<td>Where is the book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ndashaka kwiga ikinyarwanda.</td>
<td>I want to learn Kinyarwanda.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 1. Class 1 umu- aba-

1. As we take up the study of Kinyarwanda, we must first get a little picture of the structure of the language. The verb is perhaps the most important part of speech because it serves for several parts of speech. However, we will take that up later and first look at nouns, since their class and form affect most of the other words in the sentence. The nouns are found in ten classes, each class having its own set of prefixes. The prefix of a noun will determine the prefix of other words related to that noun.

2. Class 1: In this class we find only nouns which are names of people (not necessarily proper nouns). However, some nouns referring to people will be found in other classes.

Here are a few words of this class:

- umugabo - man(married), husband
- abagabo - men, husbands
- umugore - woman (married), wife
- abagore - women, wives
- umuhungu - boy, son
- abahungu - boys, sons
- umukobwa - girl, daughter
- abakobwa - girls, daughters

Observe that each of these words in the singular begins with umu. That is the singular prefix. The plural prefix is aba. Thus, in the word umugabo, umu is the prefix and -gabo is the stem (the unchangeable part). From now one when you meet a noun of the first class you will be able to form the plural.

3. Some verbs to learn:

- arakora - he is working; he works, he does (or, she)
- barakora - they are working, they work, they do
- aragenda - he(she) is going, he goes (~genda may not be used when followed by a word of place. In that case use: arajya, barajya. e.g. Arajya mu Kirambo – he is going to Kirambo.
- baragenda they are going, walking, they go
- arahinga - he (she) is hoeing, he hoes
- barahinga - they are hoeing, they hoe

Thus, the singular verb prefix is a-, and the plural verb prefix is ba-. Note: These verbs may stand alone with no noun or pronoun subject expressed when the person referred to is known.

Now perhaps you can translate these sentences:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda: (the articles a, an, the are not expressed.)
Lesson 2. Ni and Si

Vocabulary

umwana (pl. abana) - child       afite - he (she) has
umwami (abami) - king, Lord      bafite - they have
umwigisha (abigisha) - teacher   cyane (adverb) - much, very
umwigishwa (abigishwa) - pupil   murakoze - thank you

4. Vowel-change. Though we observed that the singular prefix of Class 1 is umu-, we will find some words in which it appears to be umw-, as in the nouns given above. This is due to the fact that u before another vowel becomes w. This rule applies not only in this instance, but wherever u precedes another vowel, for the language does not tolerate two vowels coming together. Thus umu-ana becomes umwana. This lengthens the vowel which begins the stem: umwigisha, abigisha.

Also, a before another vowel drops out, thus the plural of these nouns: aba-ana becomes abana; aba-igisha becomes abagisha. (Later you will learn about an exception to this rule about a.)

5. Use of ni and si: Ni means “is” or “are”, “he (she) is”, “they are” (third-person singular and plural in present time), and does not change its form regardless of the subject. Its negative si, meaning “is not”, “are not”, “he (she) is not”, “they are not”. (These words may not be used in a dependent clause or when followed by a word of place.) Ni and si may also be used with “it” for the subject, e.g., Ni uwami - it is the king. Umawana ni umukobwa – the child is a girl. Umugabo si umwigisha - the man is not a teacher. Umwigisha ni Andereya - the teacher is Andrew.

Exception: If the subject of “is” or “are” is a place, as well as the word following, the words ni and si may be used even though followed by a word of place, e.g. Kirambo ni kure - Kirambo is far away.

Note: Since in Kinyarwanda two vowels may not come together (in speaking), and most words end in vowels, and start with vowels, the last vowel of a word is dropped (elided) when the next word begins with a vowel. e.g. (one says) umawana n’umukobwa - the child is a girl (though one does not write the apostrophe); umugor’ arahinga - the woman is hoeing (but one writes: umugore arahinga.)

Exercises:

I. Without reference to the vocabularies, give the plural of the following words and their meanings:

1. umwana  3. umwami  5. umuhungu  7. umukobwa
2. umugabo  4. umugore  6. umwigisha  8. umwigishwa
II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The teacher has a wife. 9. Teachers work hard (much).
2. The children are going. 10. The women have children.
3. The man is a teacher. 11. The pupil is a girl.
4. The boys are working hard (much). 12. The girl is not a teacher.
5. The pupils have a teacher. 13. Men have wives.
7. The child is not a boy. 15. The teacher is a man.
8. The man has a son.

Lesson 3. Possessive Adjective

Vocabulary

umuntu - person  aravuga - he says, is speaking
umukozi - workman, employee  yee, yego - yes (yego is usually used in answer to greetings)
umusaza - old man  oya - no
Umukiza - Savior

Note: Observe especially the pronunciation of umuntu. It is almost as if the -ntu were blown through the nose.

6. The possessive adjective is made up of two parts: the prefix, which refers to and agrees with the object owned, and the suffix, which refers to and agrees with the owner. This agreement refers to the system of prefixes for the various classes as indicated in Par. 1.

umwana wa-njye - my child  abana ba-njye - my children

wa is the prefix which agrees with the first class singular. -njye means “me”. Thus, wanjye means “of me”, that is “my”. Do not try to use -njye for “me” in other instances. The plural prefix is ba-. In this lesson we introduce the only personal possessives (that is, the owner being a person). Other forms will be taught later.

The suffixes:

- njye - me  - cu - us
- we - you (sing.)  - nyu - you (plural)
- e - him, her  - bo - them

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wanye - my</td>
<td>banjye - my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wawe - your (sing.)</td>
<td>bawe - your (owner sing)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
we - his, her        be - his, her
wacu - our          bacu - our
wanyu - your (plur.) banyu - your (owner plur.)
wabo - their        babo - their

Note the contraction in 3rd person singular: wa-e = we; ba-e = be e.g. umana we - his child. ubana be - his children. abana babo - their children.

Note: The possessive regularly follows the noun it modifies.

7. Mbese. This word introduces a question, bit is not translated. Sometimes it is Ese. It is not necessary to always use it in questions. In speaking, it elides before a vowel, but not in writing. The verb keeps its normal place in the sentence, instead of being placed at the beginning as in English.

    e.g. Mbese abigailwa barahinga? - Are the pupils hoeing?

Se may be used instead at the end of the sentence for the same purpose. However, mbese (or ese) is more common, except in short questions.

    Abigailwa barahinga se? - Are the pupils hoeing?

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

1. Umukiza wacu ni Yesu.    5. Abigailwa babu barakora.
2. Umwigisha wabo aravuga.  6. Abantu barakora cyane.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda.

1. My child          8. Your (pl.) teachers
2. Your (s.) husband 9. Your (s.) children
3. His workmen       10. Her pupils
4. Our Savior        11. The old men work (are working).
5. Our boys          12. Your (pl.) king
7. Your (pl.) girls  15. My sons are not pupils.

Lesson 4. Class 2: umu- imi-

Vocabulary
umutima - heart  
umutwe - head  

umuriro - fire  
umusozi - hill, mountain  

umutsima - bread  
neza - well (adv.), nicely  

umugati - bread  
na - and, with, by  

umunyu - salt  

Note: **umutsima** is a sort of doughy porridge, the only bread known before the coming of Europeans. Most people now use **umugati** (from Swahili) for the European kind of bread.

8. **Class 2.** This class is not used for people, as the first class, though the singular prefix is the same. You do not need to confuse the two classes, for if it is a person it is first class; if not, it is second. The plurals are not alike.  

Prefixes: Singular: umu-, Plural imi- :: e.g. umutima - heart, imitima - hearts  

Possessive prefixes: wa-, ya- :: e.g. wanjye umutwe we - his head, yanjye imitwe yabo - their heads  

9. **Conjunction na - and.** This word **na** is used for joining nouns, but it does not connect clauses. It elides n’ before words beginning with a vowel, e.g. umugabo n’umugore - a man and a woman.  

So, when thus elided, in speaking there is no difference between **na** and **ni**, but the context will usually indicate which is intended. In writing, **na** elides, but **ni** does not.  

Words in a series in Kinyarwanda are always connected by **n**. Though in English one would say "A man, woman, and child," in Kinyarwanda it is: "Umugabo n’umugore n’umawana".  

**Exercises:**  

I. Give plurals and meanings of the following: (When necessary for the sense, make the suffix of the possessive plural, e.g., my heart, our hearts.)  

1. umukozi wawe  5. umugate wanjye  
2. umutima we  6. umutwe wawe  
3. umwana wabo  7. umwigishwa we  
4. umusozi wacu  8. umukobwa wanjye  

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda: (Do not translate words in parentheses.)  

1. The boy and the girl have their bread. 2. Jesus is my Savior. 3. The old man has salt and bread. 4. Your (pl.) children work well. 5. His daughter and your (s.) son are going. 6. My teacher has a fire. 7. The workmen and the pupils are hoeing. 8. The people are speaking. 9. Your (pl.) teachers have some salt. 10. The workman has bread and (some) salt. 11. Is your (pl.) child a boy? No, it’s a girl.
Lesson 5. Mu and Ku

Vocabulary

umwotsi - smoke (pl. imyotsi is rare.) umucyo - light
umwijima - darkness, liver umunsi - day
umwenda - garment umunezero - joy
umwenda - debt

Note: There is a slight tonal difference in the two words umwenda. Get an African to say them for you.

10. Vowel change.

u changes to w before a vowel (as in first class) e.g. umwenda.
i changes to y before a vowel (exceptions shown later) e.g. imyenda.

11. Mu and ku.

mu - in, into, out of (the inside of a thing)
ku - on, at, to (the outside of a thing), from (outside)

These various meanings are often dependent on the verb accompanying them. Thus:

kuva - to come from
kuva mu muriro - to come out of the fire
kuva ku muriro - to come away from the fire

Note: mu and ku usually remove the initial vowel of the noun following. e.g. ku muriro, not ku umuriro. (For a variation of this, see Par. 32.)

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The children have joy in their hearts. 2. The boy has bread on his head. 3. The women work on their hill. 4. Your (s.) debts 5. Our fire 6. In the fire 7. At the fire 8. The old men have darkness in their hearts. 9. The light (insert “wo”) on the hill is your fire. 10. The child is walking in the smoke.
Lesson 6. Possessive Particle

Vocabulary

umusatsi - hair (of human head)  ndakora - I am working, I work
umugozi - string, rope  ndagenda - I am going (not followed by place)
umugisha - blessing  ndajya - I am going (followed by a word of place)
umurima - garden, field  mfite - I have

12. **Possessive particle.** This is a small word used to indicate possession as expressed in English by “of” or “’s”. It is always the same as the prefix of the possessive adjective.

Thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The possessive particle always follows the name of the thing possessed and agrees with it, **not with the owner**.

umutima wa Yesu - the heart of Jesus (Jesus’ heart)
imirima y’abantu - the gardens of the people (the people’s gardens)
abana b’umwigisha - the children of the teacher (the teacher’s children)

We will not give the possessive particle with each class. Simply remember that it is the same as the prefix of the possessive adjective.

The -a of the possessive particle elides before a following vowel, both in writing and in speaking, thus: w’, b’, etc. as seen in some of the preceding examples.

**Exercises:**

I. Change to the plural and give meanings: (Make all parts plural)

1. Umwana w’umwigisha.  2. Umutwe w’umuntu.  3. Umurima w’umusaza.
4. Umugore w’umugabo.  5. Umuhungu w’umwigisha.  6. Umwigishwa wa Paulo.
10. Umutima w’umuntu.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The people of Jesus have joy in their hearts.  2. I have the light of Jesus in my heart.  3. The teacher’s workmen are working in his gardens.  4. The child of the king is a girl.  5. The smoke of the fire 6. I work on our hill.  7. The child has hair.  8. I am working in the darkness.  9. I am
going to the teacher’s garden. 10. The old man has the blessing of the Savior in his heart. 11. Jesus is my Lord and Savior.

**Lesson 7. Class 3: in-, in-**

**Vocabulary**

inka - cow  
inzira - path, way  
inzu - house (pl. amazu)  
Imana - God  
intebe - chair, stool, bench  
imbwa - dog

13. **Class 3.** The prefix for Class 3 nouns in **in-** (or **im-**) for both singular and plural. The context and agreements will usually indicate whether the word is singular or plural. Later we will note some variations of this prefix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noun prefix</td>
<td>in-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive adjective</td>
<td>ya-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e.g. inka yanjye - my cow, inka zanjye - my cows

14. **Consonant change.** (Memorize this rule. It is used in many words.)

- N before all labials (B, M, F, V, P) becomes M. e.g. in-bwa becomes imbwa.
- N before H becomes MP. e.g. in-hamba becomes impamba. Some people write it: imhamba.
- N before R becomes ND. e.g. in-ririmbo becomes indirimbo.
- N before another N or before M drops out. e.g. in-mana becomes Imana.
- N before a vowel stem becomes NZ. e.g. in-ara becomes inzara.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

1. Inka z’umugabo. 2. Umusaza n’imbwa ye. 3. Umuhungu arakora mu murima we. 4. Abakobwa bafite intebe zabo. 5. Umukobwa afite imyenda mu nzu yanjye. 6. Umwana afite imyenda ye. 7. Inka zawe ziri (are) mu murima wanjye. 8. Abantu barajya mu nzu.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The men’s dogs. 2. The girl’s chair. 3. I have a dog. 4. Our chairs. 5. Their cows. 6. My God. 7. Your (pl.) clothes. 8. The old man’s cows. 9. The teacher’s children. 10. The woman’s clothes. 11. The children are going into the man’s garden. 12. I am working in the teacher’s garden. 13. The women have bread on their heads.
Lesson 8. Adjectives

The descriptive adjectives: (in this learn only the first half of the list.)

-**bi** bad, dirty, ugly
-**bisi** raw, uncooked, unripe
-**gari** wide, broad
-**gufi** short, low, shallow
-**inshi** much, many
-**iza** good, clean, beautiful, nice, pretty
-**ke** few, scanty, little (in quantity), (sometimes, -keya)
-**kuru** important, senior, great, adult, old
-**nini** big, thick, large
-**nzinya** very small, tiny (used only with 7th Class)
-**re-re** tall, long, high, deep (prefix repeated as well as stem, e.g. muremure)
-**sa** only, alone, mere
-**shya** new
-**to** small, little (size), young, thin (sometimes, -toya)
-**zima** alive, whole, living, healthy

15. These adjectives listed here are the only descriptive adjectives in common use. Most other descriptive adjectives from English are formed by nouns or verbs as we shall see later. These adjectives take the **prefix of the noun minus the initial vowel**. They always agree with the nouns they modify in **class and number**, and they always **follow the noun**.

umuntu mubi - a bad person abantu babi – bad people
umutima mubi - a bad heart imitiba mibi – bad hearts
inka mbi - an ugly cow inka mbi - ugly cows
imbwa nshya - a new dog imbwa nshya - new dogs

As the other classes are given you will be able to form the adjectives according to this rule given above.

**Note:** If both a descriptive adjective and a possessive adjective follow a noun, the possessive must come closest to the noun, e.g. inka ze nke – his few cows. If one of the adjectives refers to quantity it usually comes last, e.g. inka mbi nke - a few bad cows.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:
1. I have an ugly dog. 2. Our house is low. 3. Your (pl.) chairs are short. 4. His bad children. 5. Their few cows. 6. The house is ugly. 7. Your (s.) clothes are dirty. 8. God is very great. 9. I have this short rope. 10. Is the teacher’s child bad?

Lesson 9. Adjectives (continued)

Vocabulary

Learn the last half of the list of adjectives in Lesson 8.

16. Vowel Changes.

1. Though in Par. 4 we stated that a before another vowel drops out, there are exceptions to this rule. In the adjectives -iza and -inshi, when an a precedes the i, the two contract into e, thus: ba-iza becomes beza, ba-inshi becomes benshi.
2. Remember that as stated in Par. 4, u before another vowel becomes w, thus: mu-iza becomes mwiza.
3. Also remember that i often (not always) becomes y before another vowel, thus: mi-iza becomes myiza, and mi-inshi becomes myinshi.

Note I. In par. 14 we said that n before a vowel becomes nzm thus n -iza becomes nziza; however, the adjective -inshi is an exception, for n-inshi becomes nyinshi. In pronouncing this adjective -inshi, the n is nasal, and is not made with the tongue.

Class 1 mwiza beza
   benshi

Class 2 mwiza myiza
   mwinshi myinshi

Class 3 nziza nziza
   nyinshi nyinshi

Note II. The adjective -nini in agreeing with the 3rd class does not get an extra n. It is simply like the stem: inka nini - a big cow.

Note III. The adjectives -nini and -to occasionally are reduplicated in the plural forms: abahungu banini-banini - big boys; abana bato-bato - little children.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:
1. My good dog is very short. 2. Your (pl.) large cows are very nice. 3. Our small chairs are new. 4. Our great God is good. 5. Your (pl.) many people work hard. 6. A tall man is working in the garden. 7. The good children are not few. 8. The teacher has many gardens. 9. His long string is nice. 10. Our God is living.

Lesson 10. Review

I. Questions

1. What are the noun prefixes singular and plural for the first class?
2. What are the noun prefixes singular and plural for the second class?
3. What are the noun prefixes singular and plural for the third class?
4. What usually happens to u before another vowel?
5. What usually happens to a before another vowel?
6. What usually happens to i before another vowel?
7. What is the negative of ni?
8. When you have a noun, a descriptive adjective, an adjective of quantity, and a possessive adjective, what is the proper order?
9. What effect do mu and ku have on the noun which follows them?
10. Before what letters does N change to M?
11. What happens when N comes before H?
12. What happens when N comes before R?
13. When can ni and si not be used for “is” and “are”?
14. When is the final vowel of ni, si, and na omitted?
15. What are the two parts of the possessive adjective?

II. Make the word -iza agree with the following nouns, singular and plural, and translate each expression: umukobwa, umugati, imbwa.

III. Translate into English:

1. Mfite umuriro mwinshi.
2. Abagabo beza barakora cyane mu mirima yabo.
3. Umwnan wanjye arajya mu nzu.
4. Abagore benshi barahinga.
5. Umwigisha afite inka nyinshi.
6. Umwana we afite imbwa.
7. Umuhungu muremure arakora ku ntebe nto.
8. Imirima yacu mishya ni myiza cyane.
10. Imyenda ye myiza si mishya.
11. Abana bato barajya mu nzu.
13. Mbese imbwa y’umuhungu ni nziza?

IV. Translate into Kinyarwanda.

1. The woman is working in her house.
2. Salt is good.
3. A child of God has much joy in his heart.
4. Out good Savior is alive.
5. Is the boy’s chair long?
6. Your (pl.) bread is bad.
7. A few girls are hoeing in the teacher’s garden.
8. Our hills are very high.
9. The important people are going to the teacher’s house.
10. The children of God have many blessings.
11. Do the men have many debts?
12. The man’s good pupils are working in his new house.

Lesson 11. Class 3 (continued)

Vocabulary

imvura - rain            ifu - flour (pl. amafu) (some use ifarini)
inyama - meat (usually pl.)    isuka - hoe (pl. amasuka)
ihene - goat            isaho - bag, sack (pl. amasaho)
imuhira - at home        isahane (or, isahani) - plate, dish (Swahili) (pl. amasahane)

17. Some third class irregularities. The last five words in this vocabulary, as well as ihene have no n in the prefix; the prefix is simply i.

   1. ifu - its plural, amafu, is used only of different types of flour.
   2. ifi - though the plural is usually amafi, sometimes it is the same as the singular.
   3. isuka, isaho, and isahane, all from their plurals with ama- in the place of i-. This is the regular plural of the fifth class, and you will learn the proper agreements there. See par. 30.
   Both the singular is 3rd class.

Note: Isahane is a Swahili word. From time to time a few Swahili words will be given because there is no equivalent for them in Kinyarwanda.

18. Preposition i. This preposition means at, to, from. It is used almost entirely with place names, e.g. i Kibuye - at Kibuye, i Remera - at Remera. With certain places ku or mu may be used, but that must be learned by familiarity with the place. However, in general, i is used.

This preposition is also used in the expressions: imuhira - at home, and with the possessive pronoun, thus: iwacu - at our place, or, at home; ivanyu - at your place (home); iwabo - at their place (home). Note that in all of these the i is attached to the other word.

In all of these latter expressions, in most instances the plural pronoun is used; however the singular is used for the head man of the kraal or family. He would say iwanjye. If he said “iwacu” he would mean “in our vicinity”. In speaking of “his place (home)”, one would say iwe.

Exercises:
I. Translate into English.


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I have much good flour. 2. The old man has many goats at his place. 3. The woman has a hoe in her house. 4. The new teacher has many gardens. 5. The teacher’s new house is large. 6. The boys have a few fish, (Make prefix for ‘few’ ma-). 7. The child’s plate is clean. 8. A man is walking to the house. He has a sack on (his) head. 9. My plate is dirty. 10. Are the boys hoeing in the rain?

Lesson 12. Verb -ri

Vocabulary

ingoma - drum, throne he? or hehe? - where? (used only in questions)
imbuto - seed, plant, fruit hano - here
intama - sheep hariya - over there
hari - there is, there are (like French il y a)

19. Verb -ri. In par. 5 we learned that ni and si are used for “is”, “are” and the negative of these words, but that in certain circumstances these words cannot be used. In many instances (in fact, whenever possible), -ri is used whenever ni and si cannot be, such as with words of place, but not for state of being, in the 3rd person, except in dependent clauses.

Here is the present conjugation of -ri:

ndi - I am (n + ri = ndi) turi - we are
uri - you are (sing.) muri - you are (pl.)
ari - he (she) is bari - they are

The bold portion is the verb prefix. In the third person, you remember that arakora is he is working, and barakora is they are working. These prefixes for the third person will change to agree with the class of the subject of that verb. Here are the forms for the classes studied thus far:

Sing. Plur.
Class 1 ari bari
Class 2 uri iri
Class 3 iri ziri

These prefixes are used for all verbs. Be sure you know them. From now on the verb prefixes of each class will be introduced with that class.
-ri is a defective verb, that is, it lacks certain parts. It has no infinitive and only a few tenses. The missing forms are provided by the verb kuba - to be, become, live (in a certain place). Hari is a form of -ri.

Note: Observe the sentence order when using he?. It is always at the end of the sentence or clause.

Ihene zawe hiri he?
(goats your are where?) Where are your goats?

Exercises:

I. Translate into English


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda.

1. Where are your (pl.) goats? 2. (the goats) They are at our place. (do not translate “the goats”, it is given to show agreement.) 3, Where are the old man’s gardens? 4, The man’s many sheep are over there. 5. Where is your (s.) new house? It is over there on the hill. 6. Where are you(pl.)? We are here at home. 7. There are many plants in the garden. 8. The child has a goat. 9. The girl has a sack of flour on (her) head. 10. The boys and girls are in the teacher’s house.

Lesson 13. Class 4 iki- ibi-

Vocabulary

ikintu - thing igihugu - country
ikijumba - sweet potato igitabo - book
ikirenge - foot igiti - tree


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noun prefix</td>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>ibi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive prefix</td>
<td>cya-</td>
<td>bya- (cyanje, byanje)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb prefix</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>bi- (kiri, biri)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective prefix</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>bi- (kibi, bibi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
21. **Change-down rule.** When the stem of a word begins with certain letters, \( k \) in the prefix must change to \( g \), and \( t \) in a prefix must change to \( d \). These are the letters which cause this change: \( C, F, H, K, S, T \). (Maybe you can make up a nonsense sentence using these letters to help you remember them, such as: Charlie found his kite pulling a string tail.)

So it is not: \( ikitabo \), but \( igitabo \), since the stem -tabo begins with \( t \). Not \( ikihugh \), but \( igihugh \), since the stem begins with \( h \).

This rule is very important and is regularly applied, so learn it well. Note, however, that it does not apply to a \( k \) or \( t \) preceded by a consonant, e.g. \( ntukora \). And it does not apply if the vowel between the \( k \) or \( t \) and the succeeding consonant is long, e.g. \( atihana \) (not, \( adihana \)).

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The girl’s sweet potatoes are dirty. 2. There are tall trees over there at your place. 3. I have a few books in my house. 4. Many hills are in our country. 5. The sweet potatoes are small. 6. Where is your (s.) book? It is at home. 7. The trees over there are not very tall. 8. The women have many sweet potatoes in their gardens. 9. Are there sheep and goats in your country? 10. The pupil’s books are in the teacher’s house.

**Lesson 14. Class 4 (continued)**

**Vocabulary**

icyuma - iron, knife, tool, metal  
igisimba - insect  
icyaha - sin  
inamaswa - wild animal (3rd cl.)  
icyobo - hole (in ground)  
hanze - outside, out of doors

22. The prefixes in the first three words of this vocabulary do not appear the same as those in the previous lesson, but they are still 4th class.

a. The prefix \( ki- \) before a vowel becomes \( cy- \), and the prefix \( bi- \) becomes by-\(-\), e.g. \( iki-aha \) becomes icyaha, \( ibi-aha \) becomes ibyaha.

b. This same rule applies to adjectives and verbs:

\( ki-iza \) becomes cyiza  
\( bi-iza \) becomes byiza  
\( ki-inshi \) becomes cyinshi  
\( bi-inshi \)

**Exercises:**
I. Give the singulars of the following words and translate (without looking in the vocabularies)

1. ibiti  6. abigishwa 11. amasuka
2. ibyobo  7. ibitabo  12. ibihugu
3. imyenda  8. abami  13. ibijumbi
4. ibirenge  9. ibyaha  14. iminsi
5. ibyuma  10. ibisimba 15. inyamaswa

II. Translate into English:


III. Translate into Kinyarwanda.

1. The holes are very deep. 2. Many people are outside. 3. There are many sins in the heart of a bad man. 4. Your (pl.) big country is nice. 5. Many good things are in their house. 6. Where are your tools? They are at home. 7. The girls have few books. 8. The tall trees over there are very beautiful. 9. The wild animal is alive. 10. There is a small hole in our garden.

Lesson 15. Special uses of Class 4

Vocabulary

igitambaro - cloth, piece of cloth imbabazi - mercy, pity, forgiveness
ikigori - corn, maize (stalk, ear) igitoki - bananas (bunch, tree)
ikirago - grass mat (for sleeping) umuneke - ripe banana

23. Compound subject When there is a compound subject, especially if the two nouns are not of the same class, the verb takes the 4th class plural prefix. This is true also of a possessive modifying two nouns, e.g. umugati n’umyana biri mu nzu - bread and meat are in the house., umurima n’inzi bye - his garden and house

However, if both nouns should be of the first class, the first class plural prefix is used, e.g. umuhungu n’umukobwa barakora - the boy and girl are working.

If both nouns are in the same class (other than the 1st class), the verb may take the plural prefix of that class or it may take the 4th class plural prefix. In most localities it seems preferable to use the same class as the nouns. The same is true of the possessive particle or adjective. Thus, it could be: ihene n’intama z’umusaza, or, ihene n’intama by’umusaza.
24. **Thing class.** When reference to something indefinite is made, such as we in English use “thing”, “something”, “it”, etc., no definite object being referred to, the fourth class agreements are used, usually in the plural:

- *ibyiza* - good things
- *ibyanjye* - my things
- *bizaba byiza* - it will be well

Note that in *ibyiza* and *ibyanjye* the initial vowel has been added, making nouns out of the adjectives. Now they are just like vowel-stem nouns.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The dog and a wild animal are over there. 2. There are ripe bananas in his house. 3. The boys have corn (pl.) and sweet potatoes. 4. Bananas are very good. 5. The new cloth is long. 6. There is a lot of (i.e. much) rain over here. 7. The men are hoeing well in the bananas. 8. Our bread (pl.) and meat are in a cloth. 9. The child’s head and feet are large. 10. The man’s chairs and drums are in his house.

**LESSON 16. -ra Present Tense of Verb**

**Vocabulary**

No new vocabulary is given in this lesson, but refresh your memory on the verbs already learned:

- *-kora* - work, do, make, fix, repair  
- *-hinga* - hoe, cultivate, dig
- *-jya* - go
- *-genda* - go, walk
- *-vuga* - speak, say
- *-va* - to come from

25. **Conjugation of -ra present.** The verb is the most complicated and the most important part of Kinyarwanda grammar. It will require much careful study.

There are several ways of expressing present time, but here we take up only one - the -ra present tense. This gets its name from the fact that -ra always comes between the personal prefix and the stem of the word in this tense. You have already seen a few forms of it in Lesson 1 and elsewhere. Here is the conjugation:

- *ndakora* - I am working, work
- *turakora* - we are working, work
- *urakora* - you (s.) are working, work
- *murakora* - you (pl.) are working
arakora - he (she) is working, works  barakora - they are working

Note: Remember, nr becomes nd, thus ndakora.

Observe and learn these personal prefixes used here: n-, u-, a-, tu-, mu-, ba-.

The third person prefixes given are those of the first class. Verb prefixes are given with each class. A verb must agree with its subject in class and number.

26. Some rules regarding this tense:

1. It is used in stating a simple fact regarding that which is happening now, whether an object or phrase follows or not. e.g. umugabo arakora cyane - the man is working hard, umuhungu arava mu nzu - the boy is coming out of the house.
2. It is used in questions and answers to questions, whether followed by an object or phrase or not.
3. It is never used in a dependent clause, when it expresses present time.
4. It is sometimes used to express habitual action, in present time, when there is no object or phrase following the verb. e.g. Mbese Abanyarwanda barahinga? - Do the Banyarwanda cultivate?, Abakobwa baravoma. - girls carry water.
5. The -ra present expresses progressive or continuous present. e.g. arakora - he is working
6. It is used as the same-day future tense. (See par. 57.)

27. Continuous present may also be like this: ndi gukora mu biro - I am now working in the office. The emphasis is on the fact that the act is now happening, like the French "-etre en train de". This is formed with the present conjugation of -ri followed by the infinitive. (For the infinitive see par. 37) In some localities, instead of saying "ndi gukora", they say "ndimo ndakora".

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. God is speaking in the hearts of people. 2. Are you (pl.) hoeing in your gardens? 3. The bad goats are going into the house. 4. A few men and a few women are working in the old man’s gardens. 5. I am going to Kirambo. 6. We are working hard in our new house. 7. The boys are coming from (out of) the field. 8. Are you (s.) going to (use mu) our country? 9. The men’s dogs are going into the teacher’s gardens. 10. Are you working in the dark?

LESSON 17. Negative of the -ra Present

Vocabulary
inzira (cl. 3) - path, way |-kunda - love, like
umubyeyi (cl. 1) - parent -shima - praise, be content with
umuti (cl. 2) - medicine kandi - also, and (to connect clauses)
indwara (cl. J) - illness

Note: umuti is used not only for medicine, but for most preparations or mixtures, such as shoe polish, insecticide, etc.

28. **Negative of -ra present.** For the negative the -ra must drop out, Its presence makes the not-yet tense (see par. 183). The negative prefix is nti- (note the exception in the first person singular), and it must precede the personal prefix. (A different negative prefix is used in dependent clauses, see par. 186).

Here is the negative conjugation:

- sinkora - I am not working
- ntidukora - we are not working
- ntukora - you are not working
- ntimukorn - you are not working
- ntakora - he is not working
- ntibakora they are not working

Note: nti-u-kora becomes ntukora, nti-a-kora becomes ntakora.

Observe the parts of the word now:

- nti- mu- kora
  - neg. prefix personal prefix verb stem

Observe also the change-down rule in 1st per. plural: ntidukora.

The third person prefixes of the other classes follow the regular rule: e.g. inka ntizijya mu murima - the cows are not going into the garden.

29. **Negative of -ri.** The negative of the verb -ri is formed the same way:

- sindi - I am not
- ntituri - we are not
- nturi - you are not
- ntimuri - you (pl.) are not
- ntari - he is not
- ntibari they are not

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate to Kinyarwanda:

1. I am not going to the house. 2. I praise God in my heart. He has much mercy. 3. The child’s illness is not very bad. 4. He does not like medicine. 5. My parents are not at home. 6. We love our Savior very much, and we do not like sin. 7. The women are not hoeing in the sweet potatoes, they are in the house. 8. Where are the goats? They are not on the path. 9. Don’t you (s.) love your parents? 10. The sleeping mat is not in the house, and my clothes are not on the chair.

LESSON 18. Class 5 i- ama-

Vocabulary

izuba - sun iryinyo - tooth (pl. amenyo)
igi - egg (pl. amagi) ifaranga - franc
ivunja - jigger ishuni - school (some write, ishuri)
ibuye - stone, pebble, rock izuru - nose, nostril
ijambo - word (pl. amagambo) iziko - fireplace, stove
ijisho - eye (pl. amaso)

30. Class 5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class prefix</td>
<td>i- (or, iri) ama- (ibuye, amabuye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive prefix</td>
<td>rya- ya- (ryanjye, yanjye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb prefix</td>
<td>ri- a- (riri, ari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective’ prefix</td>
<td>ri- ma- (ribi, mabi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1: The singular adjective prefix here is ri-. This is the only place the adjective prefix differs from the noun prefix (see par. 15). Before a vowel the singular adjective prefix becomes ry- e.g. ryíza.

Note 2: These plural prefixes are the accords used for the nouns given in Lesson 11 which form their plural with ama-.

31. Note and learn the plurals of ijisho, ijambo, and iryinyo, since they seem irregular. Though amenyo looks irregular it actually is not. In par. 16, we saw that sometimes a and i contract into e, thus ama-inyo becomes amenyo.

The singular prefix of Class 5 nouns before a vowel is iry- instead of just i-, as in the word, iryinyo.

32. Mu and ku with 5th class nouns. Nearly all 5th class nouns keep their initial vowel when they follow mu or ku, contrary to the regular rule. However, in speaking it is pronounced as if it were mw and kw. This is also true of the nouns which are 3rd class in the singular, but take a 5th class plural, such as isuka, isaho, isahane, but not inzu.
mu ishuri (pronounced: mw ishuri) - in school
ku ibuye (pronounced: kw ibuye) - on a rock
ku isahane (pronounced: kw isahane) - on a plate

However, a few 5th class nouns follow the regular rule and drop the initial vowel after mu and ku. The important ones are:

mu (or ku) zUba - in the sun
mu (or ku) zuru - in the nose
mu (or ku) jisho - in the eye
mu (or ku) ziko - in the fireplace

The plurals of all 5th class nouns follow the regular rule, dropping the initial vowel: ku mabuye - on the stones, mu maso - in the eyes.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The teacher says many words. 2. Our new school is very nice. J. The sun is large. 4. The Word of God is good: it works in people’s hearts. 5. Do his parents have many francs? 6. John (Yohana) doesn’t like eggs, but (ariko) he likes meat. 7. I have the blessing of the Savior in my heart, and I love His word. 8. The child has a small nose and big eyes, and much hair. 9. The old man has only a few teeth. 10. Women don’t go to (use mu) school. 11. The girl has a little stone in her nose. 12. I have a jigger in my foot.

LESSON 19. More about Class 5

Vocabulary

amazi - water 
amaraso - blood
amata - milk -shaka - want, desire, look for
amavuta - butter, oil ico - dirt (not soil as in garden)
ameza - table (s.) icumu - spear
amahoro - peace

33. Nouns with only plural form. There are a number of words in 5th class which have only the plural form. Of course, all agreements are with this plural form. The first 6 words in this vocabulary are some of these. You will learn others later.

34. 5th class words having c. The last two words in this vocabulary, icumu and ico, look like 4th class words with a vowel root. But they are regular 5th class words,
forming their plurals like any other word in this class, but their stem begins with c: icumu - spear; amacumu - spears.

Besides the two words given here, there is one other of fairly common use: icukiro - manure heap. There may be a few other rare words like this.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. God’s people have joy and peace. 2. I have a very small stone in (my) eye. 3. The pupils have the Word of God in school. 4. I want (some) clean water. 5. Bad people are not going in the way of God. 6. The clean cloths are on the table. 7. A workman is hoeing at the school. 8. Our teacher is speaking the Word of God. 9. I am walking in the way of God. 10. We are praising God and we love our Lord Jesus Christ (Kristo).

**LESSON 20. Review**

I. Questions:

1. Name three words in the 3rd class which form their plurals like 5th cl.
2. What are the prefixes of 4th class nouns?
3. What change takes place in those prefixes before a vowel.
4. Conjugate the verb -ri in the present affirmative; negative.
5. What verb takes the place of -ri for forms that are lacking?
6. What preposition is usually used for “at” or “to” with names of places?
7. Give the verb prefixes (3rd pers.) singular and plural for all the classes I learned thus far.
8. What is the change-down rule?
9. Give two uses of the 4th class prefixes other than for nouns which regularly belong in that class.
10. Conjugate: -genda, in the -ra present; -hinga in the -ra-present negative; -kunda in the present negative.
11. When may the -ra present tense not be used?
12. What are the 5th class noun prefixes?
13. Explain the use of mu and ku with 5th class nouns, singular and plural.
14. What are the exceptions to this rule?
15. Give the possessive particle for each of the classes studied, singular and plural.

II. Give the plurals and the meanings of the following:

1. umubyeyi  
2. ifi
III. Translate into English:


IV. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I am working in my big garden. 2. Children do not like wild animals. 3. The teachers have many good pupils in the schools. 4. The boys’ small mats are in their house. 5. The Banyarwanda like corn and sweet potatoes and bananas. 6. Are you (s.) going home? 7. A girl is working in her parents’ garden at their place. 8. We are praising God in our hearts. 9. The goat is on a large stone. 10. There are many cows in our country. 11. The children want (some) corn (pl.) and (some) milk. 12. Our nice new sohool is very big. 13. The child’s medicine is not on the table. Where is it? 14. I want my books. Are they in your (s.) house? 15. A big wild animal is in a hole in the teacher’s field. 16. Your (s.) new cloth is very pretty. 17. Where are the meat and butter? 18. My parents have (some) tall trees at their place.’ 19. The cows are not walking in the path. 20. Where is the teacher? He is speaking the Word of God at the school.
Lesson 21. Verb -fite

Vocabulary

umukene (cl. 1) - poor person  inzara (cl. 3) - hunger
umukire (cl. 1) - rich person  ariko - but
umuyaga (cl. 2) - wind  ubu - now
inkoko (cl. 3) - chicken  ubu ngubu - right now

35. Verb -fite. This verb is defective. Like -ri it has no infinitive and no imperative, no future, and, in fact very few other tenses. The verb used for its missing parts is kugira.

Since the -ra present tense ordinarily is not used with this verb when an object follows (and one usually does), we give here the present tense without -ra of which you have already had a number of forms:

mfite - I have  dufite - we have
ufite - you have  mufite - you have
afite - he (she) has  bafite - they have
Note the change of letters in the personal prefixes according to the rules given in par. 14 and 21. Remember theaccords for the other classes, e.g. Imana ifite - God has.

The negative is formed regularly: simfite, ntufite, ntafite, etc.

The -ra present of this verb is not used, except when there is an object pronoun in the verb (See Lesson 57, 58).

Exercises:

I. Translate into English


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The poor man’s child has much hunger. 2. Sins are very bad, but God has mercy. 3. The rich man’s wife has a bad illness. 4. Is there much wind in your country? 5. We have chickens, but not (= they are not) many. 6. The rich man’s spear is very long. 7. We like chicken meat (meat of chicken), but poor people don’t have chickens. 8. You (s.) have good cows; do you have much milk and butter? 9. We are working hard in our gardens, but we don’t have many sweet potatoes. 10. The men are praising God, and they have much joy.

LESSON 22. Infinitive and Imperative

Vocabulary

kumena - to spill, break, empty out ( tr.) guteka - to cook (in water)(tr.)
kujugunya i to throw away, discard gufasha - to help
gusoma - to read iki? - what?
kuzana - to bring

Note: tr. after a verb means “transitive”, i.e. a verb that takes an object. int. means intransitive, i.e. it does not take an object. “to go” is intransitive; “to help” is transitive.

36. Infinitive. You will see that all the verbs in this vocabulary begin with ku or gu. (Remember the change-down rule, par. 21). In English we form an infinitive by placing the word “to” before the verb, e.g. to work. In Kinyarwanda, ku (gu) is attached to the verb stem. Then to conjugate a verb we simply remove the ku and add the proper prefixes. From now on all verbs given in the vocabularies will be given in the infinitive form.

Note the use: Ndashaka kugenda - I want to go.
You can easily form the infinitives of the verbs already learned.

37. **Imperative.** The singular imperative is simply the stem of the verb: Kora - work! Genda - go! Zana - bring!

The singular negative imperative is like the present negative, except that the final *a* is changed to *e*, e.g. Ntugende - don’t go, Ntuteke ibijumba - don’t cook sweet potatoes.

For further explanations see par. 132-134. Two imperatives may not follow each other without changing the form of the second one (see par. 134). Except in the imperative, the verb stem can never stand alone.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Hoe well in your (s.) big garden. 2. Cook the sweet potatoes and corn. 3. Go to help the poor people. 4. I like to work in the house. 5. The boys want to go to school. 6. The pupils like to read in school. They read very well. 7. Don’t bring your (s.) sleeping mats and clothes into the house now. 8. What are you (pl.) doing? We are helping the boys (to) bring the fish. 9. Don’t empty out the milk; it is good. 10. The wind is bringing the smoke into our eyes.

**LESSON 23. Class 6 uru- in-**

**Vocabulary**

| urugi - door | urukwi - stick of firewood |
| urutoke (or, urutoki)- finger | uruzi - river |
| urukundo - love (no pl.) | urubaharo - board, slate |
| urugo - homestead, kraal, enclosure (urugo is often used for “home”) | gushyira - to put |

38. **Class 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noun prefix</td>
<td>uru- (urutoke)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss. prefix</td>
<td>rwa- (rwanjye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb prefix</td>
<td>ru- (ruri)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adje. prefix</td>
<td>ru- (rubi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
39. In forming the plurals of words, in this class remember the changes that take place when \( n \) comes in contact with certain letters (par. 14), e.g. urubaho - board, imbah - boards

40. The plural of uruzi is inzuzi, and that of urugi is inzug, and likewise for all vowel-stem nouns of this class. (The stems of these words are: -uzi, -ugi.)

Note: The plural agreements of class 6 are exactly the same as those of class 3.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The man’s fingers are long. 2. Bring wood (insert zo) to put in the fire. 3. The love of God is great (much). 4. The long river is over there. 5. We have a few slates in school.

II. Translate into English:


III. Give plurals and meanings of these words. Write a sentence using each of these words in either singular or plural.

1. inka 5. uruzi 8. urukwi
2. urutoke 6. ishuri 9. urubaho
3. isahane 7. igi 10. urugi
4. inkoko

**LESSON 24. Class 6 (cont.)**

**Vocabulary**

uruhu - skin    uruyuki - bee
urufunguzo - key (Sw.)    uruhinja - infant (up to one month)
ururimi - tongue, language    uruzige - locust
urushyi - palm of hand    urwara - fingernail, toenail

41. **Urushyi.** The plural is amashyi. This word is usually used in the sense of holding out one’s hands to receive something. They say, “Tega amashyi” - hold out your hands.

**Urushyi** also has the a regular 6th class plural, inshyi, but it means “slaps in the face”.

42. The words uruyuki and urwara form their plurals with a z: inzuki, inzara. (Do not confuse inzara with inzara meaning “hunger”. The tone is different as well as the syllable being longer.) These are vowel-stem words, thus inz-__ in the plural (see par. 14 and 40). Observe: | uru-uki = uruyuki | inz-uki

       uru-ara = urwara (since the vowel a is long, the u of the prefix changes to w.) Pl. inzara.

43. Observe the plurals of uruhu and uruhinja: impu, impinja. Remember that n + h = mp.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The cow’s skin is large. 2. The teacher speaks many languages. 3. Where are your (s.) keys? They are here. 4. The boy’s fingernails are dirty. 5. The woman’s baby (infant) has a bad illness. 6. God puts love in our hearts. 7. What do you have in your hand (palm)? 8. Many bees and locusts are in our fields. 9. Put the teacher’s keys in his room. 10. Women love their babies (tiny) very much.

LESSON 25. Prefixless Present Tense

Vocabulary

kugura - to buy  n’ingoga - quickly
kugurisha - to sell  vuba - quickly, soon, recently
gusenga - to pray, worship  buhoro-buhoro - slowly, softly, so-so (sometimes used in the simple form “buhoro”)
kubona - to see, find, receive, get  kuza - to come
urwandiko (inz-) - letter (missile)

44. Prefixless Present. This is another tense used to express present time. It is not truly “prefixless”, for the personal prefixes are used, the same as for the -ra- present. But the -ra- is omitted. Thus:

nkora - I work  dukora - we work
ukora - you work  mukora - you work
akora - he works  bakora - they work

The negative is the same as that of the -ra- present, see par. 28.

45. **Uses of the prefixless present tense.**

1. It is used to express habitual present: nsenga Imana - I worship God (regularly). When nothing else follows the verb in the clause, except cyane, the -ra- is retained, even to express habitual action.
2. It must be used for present time in most dependent clauses, which we will study later.
3. There are times when you will hear it used when you would expect the -ra-present. Observe those by listening carefully, but for the most part follow these rules given here, and those in paragraph 26.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. We like to worship God. 2. The boy is coming slowly. 3. Go quickly to school. The teacher is speaking. 4. Put the books on the chair. 5. Where do you (s.) cultivate? I cultivate in my fields. 6. What are you selling? I’m selling chickens and eggs. 7. The pupils walk slowly; they don’t want to go to school. 8. Bring your (s.) books here. I want to see the words. 9. Go to the river quickly. Bring (some) fish. 10. I like to get letters. Do you get letters?

**LESSON 26. Class 7 aka- utu-**

**Vocabulary**

agakiza - salvation (no pl.)  umurimo - work, task
akazi - work (Sw.) (no pl.)  umunwa. - mouth, lip
akantu - a little thing  mukanwa - inside the mouth
agahinda - sorrow (no pl.)  injangwe - cat (tame or wild)
ibicurane - cold in the head, runny nose

46. **Class 7.**

Noun prefix aka- (akantu) utu- (utuntu)
Pass. prefix ka- (kanjye) twa- (twanjye)
Verb prefix ka- (kari) tu- (turi)
Adj. prefix ka- (kabi) tu- (tubi)

Note: ka- for adjective prefix before i changes to ke-: ka-iza = keza.

47. The plural is not very common for most of the words given above. However the plural is used commonly, especially for words brought into this class from other classes, as you see in the following paragraph.

48. This is the diminutive class. Words of all other classes may be given the prefixes of this class to give the meaning of a little thing:

    e.g. ikintu - thing    akantu - a little thing
    igisimba - wild animal agasimba - insect
    umwenda - garment     akenda - a little clothing
    umunyu - salt         akunyu - a little salt
    amazi - water         utuzi - a little water
    amata - milk          uduta - a little milk

Note that the last two words, since in their regular form they have only a plural prefix, when changed to this class, still have a plural prefix. Note also that the diminutive of umunyu is akunyu, not akanyu. Also, ijambo in the diminutive is usually used in the plural: utugambo.

49. The diminutive form is commonly used when a person is asking for something, though it isn’t just a little that he wants. e.g. Ndashaka uduta - I want a little milk (but he really wants more than a little.)

Exercises:

I. Change the following words to the diminutive form, giving both singular and plural, if both exist (without reference to the above list).

1. igiti
2. umunyu
3. imbuto
4. igitabo
5. ibuye
6. ikijumba
7. igitambaro
8. inkoko
9. umwenda
10. igisimba
11. umuga ti
12. urukwi
13. amazi
14. urwandiko
15. inyama (pl. only and retain _n_ of prefix)
II. Translate into Kinyarwanda (use diminutive rather than adjective wherever possible)

1. The woman has a tiny child. 2. The children want a little milk. 3. We have the salvation of Jesus in our hearts. 4. The old man has much sorrow. 5. We have much work, but we like to work. 6. The child’s mouth is small. 7. The large cat goes in the garden. 8. There is a very little mountain in our country. 9. The children have (some) very small dishes. 10. Some little dogs are in your (s.) house.

LESSON 27. Class 8 ubu- ama-

Vocabulary

ubwenge - wisdom (no pl.) uburiri - bed
ubuntu - grace (no pl.) ishaza (5th) - pea(s)
ubugingo - life (no pl.) kuko - because
ubwato - boat

50. Class 8.

Noun prefix ubu- (uburiri) ama- (amariri)
Poss. prefix bwa- (bwanjye) ya- (yanjye)
Verb prefix bu- (buri) a- (ari)
Adj. prefix bu- (bubi) ma- (mabi)

51. Most words in this class have no plural, but ubwato and uburiri do have: amato, amariri.

52. The great majority of words in this class are those expressing abstract ideas such as the first three nouns of the vocabulary; they seldom have a plural.

53. Bwa. This is pronounced baa. You will see it written bga in some of the other printings. Have an African help you with the pronunciation.

54. Kuko introduces a dependent clause. Remember the rules about verbs in dependent clauses (par. 5, 19, 26). Kuko and other conjunctions ending in -ko (such as, ariko) in pronunciation change the -ko to -kw before words beginning with a, e, or i, and to k before u. You will also see it written that way in some of the older printings. e.g. kukw afite..; kuk’ ufite..

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The women have a few good peas. 2. God’s wisdom is very great (much). 3. The men are going in boats. 4. Do you (pili.) have the grace of Jesus in your hearts? 5. Bring the short bed into the house. 6. A wise person (a person of Wisdom) loves God because He brings salvation into our hearts. 7. God’s mercy and grace bring peace into my life. 8. Do you (pl.) see the boat on (mu) the river over there? 9. The poor man wants to buy a new bed, but he hasn’t (any) francs. 10. I have joy because God loves to help people.

LESSON 28. Class 8 (cont.)

Vocabulary

ubushye - burn (no pl.) ubwoya - fur, hair (except of human head) (no pl.)
ubukene - need, poverty (no pl.) uburyo - opportunity, way, kind (no pl.)
ubwana - childhood (no pl.) ubutumwa - message (no pl.)
ubusore - youth (age, not person) ubutumwa bwiza - Gospel

55. Observe the words in this class: ubwana (from umwana), and ubusore (from umusore). Many others are formed in this way, e.g. Ubukristo (from Umukristo) - Christianity. Another use of this class is in temporal expressions, such as:

bwakeye - it has dawned
burije - it is getting dark, it is late (in the day) (bwije in dependent clauses)
bukeye - the next day
uhu - now

You will learn other expressions from time to time involving this use.

56. Imperative of “to come’. Kuza has no imperative in the singular, and so you must use ngwino - come, come here.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. We have a good opportunity (insert “bwo”) to worship God. 2. There is much joy in the Gospel of Jesus. 3. Sheep’s hair is long, but a dog’s hair is short. 4. We have great (much) need
in our hearts; but Jesus is our Savior and He has great mercy. 5. We want an opportunity (insert “bwo”) to help the poor people because they have great need. 6. A woman is bringing (some) flour into the house. 7. Put (some) oil on the child’s burn. 8. In my childhood I liked (nakundaga) to help my teacher. 9. Come here; bring your peas and corn. 10. Don’t you want to read in the Gospel of John (Yohana)?

LESSON 29. Future Tense

Vocabulary

kubika - to put away, to store
kugaruka - to return, come back
kugira - to do, make, have
gusubira - to return, go back, do again, repeat
nimugoroba - in the afternoon (about 3 p.m. till 6 p.m.)
ejo - yesterday, tomorrow (depending on tense of verb)
uyu munsi - today
none - today, now
ubwoba - fear (no pl.)

57. Future Tense. For future time after today the particle -za- is inserted in the verb between the personal prefix and the verb stem. This is often called the far future tense. -za- is always long in both affirmative and negative. Thus:

nzagenda - I shall go
tuzagenda - we shall go
uzagenda - you will go
muzagenda - you will go
azagenda - he will go
bazagenda they will go

But for future time today (called the near future tense) the -ra- present is used. In this use the -ra- is retained even in dependent clauses.

ndagenda none - I shall go today
nzagenda ejo - I shall go tomorrow

58. Verb kugira. This is a very important verb for it is used in many idiomatic expressions. e.g. kugira ubwoba - to be afraid, have fear.

You remember also that this is the verb which supplies the missing parts of -fite. Thus, for the future of “to have” you must use kugira.

59. Verbs kugaruka, gusubira. Kugaruka is used in the sense of to return to the place where the speaker is. e.g. A man at Kigali would say of another, “Azagaruka hano ejo” - he will return here tomorrow. But if a man is at Kigali and says, “I will return to Butare tomorrow,” he would not use kugaruka, but gusubira, e.g. Nzasubira i Butare ejo - I will return (go back) to Butare tomorrow.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The women will dig in their husbands’ gardens tomorrow, but today they are reading in school. 2. The teachers are going to Kigali today but they will return tomorrow. 3. The boys will put away their books in the afternoon. 4. You (pl.) will have God’s blessing in your hearts (far future). 5. The teacher will come tomorrow into the school to speak the Word of God. 6. The children are afraid because they see a wild animal outside. 7. Will you (pl.) come back today? No, we will come back tomorrow afternoon. 8. What will the pupils do (this) afternoon? They will read in the Gospel of Matthew (Matayo). 9. The women are putting away the clothes now. They will come back tomorrow. 10. We are praising God because He will have much mercy.

LESSON 30. Review

I. Conjugate:

1. **kugenda** in the -ra- present, affirmative.
2. **-fite** in the prefixless present affirmative.
3. **gukora** in the prefixless present negative
4. **-ri** in the prefixless present negative.
5. **gufasha** in the far future affirmative.
6. **gusoma** in the far future affirmative.

II. Questions:

1. What verb is used for the missing forms of **-fite**? What are some forms of **-fite** that do not exist?
2. How is the imperative formed: affirmative? negative?
3. When must the prefixless present tense be used?
4. When is the **-ra**- present most often used?
5. What tense is usually used when the present verb is the last word in the sentence?
6. What class is used for the diminutive?
7. What kind of words for the most part are found in Class 8?
8. What happens when the prefix **bu**- precedes a vowel?
9. What is the imperative of “to come”?
10. When is the **-za**- future used?
11. What other tense may be used to express a future idea and when is it used?
12. Give the diminutive form of these words: igitabo, umwana, umusozi, urubaho, amazi, igiti.

III. Make the possessive adjective “my” agree with the following words. Then change the words to plurals including the possessive adjective. Also give the meanings of these expressions. (Some words may not have a plural.) e.g. For the word umuhungu you would write: umuhungu wanjye - my son, abahungu banjye - my sons.
IV. Make the adjective -iza agree with the following nouns, singular and plural, if plural exists, and translate:

1. ubutumwa 6. akantu 11. uruhu
2. umuyaga 7. icyuma 12. inkoko
3. uruhinja 8. ubwoya 13. urabeho
4. Ishaza 9. amata 14. ifu
5. ijambo 10. agakizu 15. umunsi

V. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. We will read in the Gospel of John now. 2. Many rich men have many things, but they do not have peace in their hearts. 3. Jesus has grace, love and, mercy; He wants to help people. 4. The woman will cook fish on the stove tomorrow. 5. Come here; don’t put the board away in the house. 6. Pour out the bad milk; bring the good milk in the house. 7. Tomorrow the old man’s sheep and goats will go into our field. 8. Work quickly; it is late and you have much work. 9. The rich man will return to his home tomorrow. 10. We are bringing our dishes because we want (some) meat.

LESSON 31. Negative of Future Tense

Vocabulary

kuririmba - to sing kugera - to arrive
kubanza - to begin by, do first indirimbo - song, hymn
gutangira - to begin to mu gitondo - in the morning

60. Negative of far future tense. This follows the regular rule: negative prefix, personal prefix, tense sign, stem of verb:
sinzagenda - I shall not go  ntituzagenda - we shall not go
ntuzagenda - you will not go  ntimuzagenda - you will not go
ntazagenda - he will not go  ntibazagenda - they will not go

Thus:

nti- ba- za- genda

neg. prefix pers. pref. tense si stem

This negative form of the future cannot be used in dependent clauses.

61. Verbs kubanza and gutangira. Though both of these words mean “begin”, they are not used interchangeably.

Banza guhinga - begin by hoeing, hoe first (implying that there is something else to do when hoeing is finished) :: Tangira guhinge. - begin to hoe (that is, start that task now)

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The cows will not go into the river. 2. We shall have the blessings of God in our hearts. 3. The pupils will not arrive in school tomorrow morning. 4. You (s.) will come in the evening (today) to help the girls. 5. We will begin to sing soon. 6. First go to work in the garden. 7. The women will not cook fish tomorrow morning; they will cook meat. 8. Our teacher will arrive this afternoon; he is not here in the morning. 9. The old man’s son will not go to school tomorrow because he has a bad illness. 10. We will not buy your (pl.) goats; they are very small.

LESSON 32. Class 9 uku- ama-

Vocabulary

ukuboko - arm  ukuri - truth (no pl.)
ukuguru - leg  ukwezi - moon, month (pl. amezi)
ugutwi - ear  (u)kwizera - faith (no pl.)
ukwaha - armpit

Sing.  Pl.
Noun prefix uku- (ukuboko)  ama- (amaboko)
Poss. prefix kwa- (kwanjye)  ya- (yanjye)
Verb prefix ku- (kuri)  a- (ari)
Adj. prefix ku- (kubi)  ma- (mabi)

The plural accords are the same as those of Class 5.

According to the regular rule, ku- before a vowel becomes kw- e.g. ku-iza = kwizam ku-inshi= kwinshi

63. This class contains all infinitives, for in Kinyarwanda, as in English, an infinitive may be used as a noun. Besides the infinitives, there are very few other words in this class, except those given in this vocabulary. The word given here, (u)kwizera - faith, comes from the verb kwizera - to believe. The infinitive, become a noun, is given the initial vowel u only when it follows a form of the verb "to be", such as ni, si, -ri. Otherwise it looks just like the infinitive, but the context will usually make it plain whether it is the infinitive or a noun.

   kugaruka - to return
   kugaruka kwe - his return
   Kwizera kwawe kuri he? - Where is your faith?
   Hari ukwizera kwinshi mu mutima we - There is great faith in his heart.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The arm of God is not short. 2. The moon is small now but soon we shall see a large moon. 3. Do you have much faith in your heart? 4. The teacher’s faith is very great (much). 5. Jesus will come soon; perhaps (ahari) we shall see His return. 6. Put (some) medicine on the child’s leg. 7. My daughter has a burn on her arm. 8. A month has many days. 9. Are you (s.) telling (speaking) the truth? Will you help the poor man tomorrow? 10. Their parents will not come tomorrow because there are locusts in their garden and they have much work.

**LESSON 33. Class 10 aha-**

**Vocabulary**
ahantu - place
gukubura - to sweep
hasi - on the ground, floor
gukiza - to heal, save, save from
ibishyimbo (cl. 4) - dry beans, bean plants
kuguma - to stay, remain

64. **Class 10.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun prefix aha- (ahantu)</th>
<th>Poss. prefix ha- (hanjye)</th>
<th>Verb prefix ha- (hari)</th>
<th>Adj. prefix ha- (habi)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

65. There is only one word in class 10: **ahantu** - place. However, this prefix **ha**- is used to express the idea of place whether the word **ahantu** is used or not.

66. Some uses of the ha- prefix:

1. In the adjective:
   a) to agree with the adverb of place. e.g. Hano ni heza - here it is nice (or, clean), or, It is a good place here.
   b) in the adjective when **ahantu** is understood. e.g. Ni habi cyane - it is very dirty (place).
2. As a verb subject:
   a) to agree with **ahantu** or adverb of place. e.g. Hariya hitwa Kigali - That place over there is called Kigali.
   b) in an impersonal sense when no subject is expressed. e.g. Harashyushye - it is hot.
   c) to represent the English expletive “there”. (You have already seen this in **hari**.) e.g. Haza umugabo - there comes a man. Hari ibijumba - are there any sweet potatoes? Yee, birahari - Yes, there are.

   **Note:** In **birahari** the **ha**- gives the idea of place also. Note that in answering this question one would make the verb agree with **ibijumba**: Yee, birahari - Yes, there are. Nta bihari - there are none. (See par. 213).

   Sometimes just **hari** is used. e.g. Hari amazi menshi hano - there is much water here.

3. In the expression: mu maso hawe - your face. Since there is no other word for “face”, **amaso** is used with the possessive adjective having the **ha**- prefix, and it is preceded by **mu**.
4. “In” is not usually used with **ahantu**: not “mu hantu heza”. Thus “in a good place” is **ahantu heza**.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I don’t want to stay in a dirty place. 2. Are there (any) bananas on the ground? 3. Jesus likes to save people from their sins. 4. The girls are sweeping the floor. 5. Outside it is very dirty; go to sweep the ground well. 6. I see a nice place over there. 7. Peter’s son will not go to Cyangugu. 8. Are there (any) people in the school? Yes, there are many men and women and a few children. 9. In the morning there come a few workmen. (While awkward in English, this is correct in Kinyarwanda.) 10. John has joy in his face.

LESSON 34. Chart of the Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>NOUN PREFIX</th>
<th>VERB PREFIX</th>
<th>POSS. PREFIX</th>
<th>ADJ. PREFIX</th>
<th>POSS.PART</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Sing.</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>wa-</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>aba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>ba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sing.</td>
<td>umu-</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>wa-</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>imi-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>mi-</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sing.</td>
<td>in-</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>n- (m-)</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>in-</td>
<td>zi-</td>
<td>n- (m-)</td>
<td>za-</td>
<td>za</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Sing.</td>
<td>iki-</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>ki-</td>
<td>cya-</td>
<td>cya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>ibi-</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>bya-</td>
<td>bya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Sing.</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>ri-</td>
<td>rya-</td>
<td>rya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Sing.</td>
<td>uru-</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>ru-</td>
<td>rwa-</td>
<td>rwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>in-</td>
<td>zi-</td>
<td>n- (m-)</td>
<td>za-</td>
<td>za</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Sing.</td>
<td>aka-</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>utu-</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>tu-</td>
<td>twa-</td>
<td>twa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Sing.</td>
<td>ubu-</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>bu-</td>
<td>bwa-</td>
<td>bwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Sing.</td>
<td>uku-</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>ku-</td>
<td>kwa-</td>
<td>kwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>ama-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ya-</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Sing.</td>
<td>aha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>ha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>aha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>ha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: From now on in general the class of a noun will not be indicated in the vocabularies, for you should be able to identify them for yourself.

Exercises:

Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. His good dog.  
2. Our new books.
3. A little boy.  
4. Cold (fresh) milk.  
5. Where is their big garden?  
6. God’s Son.  
7. The teacher’s key.  
8. A long river.  
9. The grace of God.  
10. The sheep are here.  
11. New hearts.  
12. The poor man’s many debts.  
13. My eyes.  
14. Your (s.) long fingers.  
15. God’s mercy and grace.  
16. Good seeds are in the garden.  
17. Our many bad sins.  
18. The love of Jesus  
19. The girl’s mat.  
20. Much wind.  
22. Our Savior.  
23. The boys’ chairs.  
24. God’s people.  
26. The boat is on the river.  
27. Good meat.  
28. My nice cat.  
29. Many words.  
30. Your (pl.) parents.

LESSON 35. Vowel-stem Verbs

Vocabulary

kwandika - to write  
kwigisha - to teach
kwizera - to trust, believe  
kwiga - to learn, study 
kwereka - to show  
kwhana - to confess, repent (of)

63. **Vowel-stem verbs** have stems which begin with a vowel which is always long: -andika, izera, etc. Since the vowel u before another vowel becomes w, the infinitive ku-andika becomes kwandika. So whenever you see an infinitive beginning with kw- you know it is a vowel-stem verb. In some modern orthographies the u of ku- is dropped before u and o, thus: kubaka (stem :ubaka), and koza (stem -oza).

69. For the conjugation of these verbs it is very important to remember the rules for vowel and consonant changes. (Par. 4, 14, 21, 22, 31, 46, 62)

a) Here is the -ra- present conjugation:

   ndizera - I trust  
turizera - we trust
urizera - you trust  
murizera - you trust
arizera - he trusts  
barizera - they trust

For other classes, the same principle applies, for it is the a of -ra that makes the contraction.

Note: In all forms of these vowel-stem verbs the accent falls on that first vowel of the stem, which is always long, thus: arandika.

b) The prefixless present:

   nizera  
twizera (tu+izera = twizera)
wizera (u+izera = wizera) myizera (mu+izera = mwizera)
yizera (a+izera = yizera) bizera (ba+izera = bwizera)

70. Note this tense for the other classes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 2 wereka yereka</th>
<th>Class 7 kereka twereka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 yereka zereka</td>
<td>8 bwereka yereka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 cyereka byereka</td>
<td>9 kwereka yereka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 rjereka yereka</td>
<td>10 hereka hereka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 rwereka zereka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

71. Note in the 3rd person singular yizera, the vowel change of a. Instead of the vowel a dropping out before another vowel, as you have learned, it here changes to y. Thus a-izera becomes yizera; likewise, yereka, yandika.

Exercises:

1. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyjlarwanda:
   1. The boys write well but they do not read well. 2. The bad man is confessing his sins; he will receive the blessing of God and joy in his heart. 3. I believe the Word of God and I want to teach many people to trust God. 4. Our Savior, Jesus, will save bad people. They will receive new hearts. 5. His repentance is good. 6. Do you (s.) trust the Savior? He wants to show people His love. 7. The love of God shows people the good way. 8. Do you (pl.) write letters in school? 9. Parents teach their children to do well. 10. We are learning to sing (some) nice new songs.

LESSON 36. Far Future and Present Negative of Vowel-stem Verbs

Vocabulary

kwibagirwa - to forget kwambara- to wear, put on
kwibuka - to remember kwanga - to refuse, hate
kwuoaka (or, kubaka) - to build kwemera - to agree, be willing, accept, admit

72. Far Future of vowel-stem verbs. This is formed by dropping the -a- of the -za-tense sign before the vowel of the stem: nzemera - I will agree, azibuka - he will remember
73. **Negative future** of vowel-stem verbs is formed according to the same rule, but, of course, adding the negative prefix: sinzibagirwa - I shall not forget, ntazubaka - he will not build.

74. **Negative present** of vowel-stem verbs follows the same rule as that for the prefixless present affirmative, except that the negative prefix is added:

- sinibuka - I don’t remember
- ntiwibuka - we don’t remember
- ntiyibuka - you don’t remember
- ntimwibuka - you don’t remember
- ntiyemera - he doesn’t remember
- ntibibuka - they don’t remember

All other vowel-stem verbs are handled in the same way. It is important to remember that the vowel of the stem is never lost in any kind of contraction. ntiyambara - he doesn’t wear, ntiyubaka - he doesn’t build, ntiyemera - he doesn’t agree.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

1. Umubyeyi ntiyanga gufasha abana be.
2. Abagabo bazubaka ishuri ejo.
3. Abagore bazemera gukora neza mu mirima y’abagabo babo.
5. Abakene ntibambara imyenda myiza kandi ntibafi te amafaranga menshi.
6. Ihene ntizambara imyenda, ariko zifite ubwoya.
7. Tuzubaka inzu nshya iwacu.
8. Mbese muzambara imyenda yanyu myiza ku munsi mukuru?
10. Abigishwa ntibazandika inzandiko vuba, kuko bazabanza kwiga gusoma.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The teacher’s workmen will build his new house soon.
2. You (s.) will not forget to come to buy your books today.
3. The boys agree to go to Kigali to look for their things.
4. The rich man refuses to work in his garden.
5. You (pl.) will remember to come to school tomorrow morning.
6. I am not willing to bring my slate, because we have slates at school.
7. God’s people will build a new school soon.
8. Do sheep refuse to go in the path?
9. Will you (s.) remember the good words of your teacher?
10. The poor man will not repent of his sins because he is afraid (= has fear).

**LESSON 37. Cardinal Numbers 1 - 10**

Your vocabulary for this lesson is the numbers given in the following paragraph. 75.

Stems of the number words:

- mwe one
- tanu five
- (u)munani eight
- biri two
- tandatu six
- (i)cyenda nine
- tatu three
- rindwi seven
- (i)cumi ten
- ne four

Numbers from one through seven must have prefixes according to the class of the noun modified, but from eight to ten the forms are invariable. Here are the numbers
with the first class agreements. The prefixes are the same as for verbs, except the first class singular.

umuntu umwe - one person abantu batandatu - six people
abantu babiri - two people abantu barindwi - seven people
abantu batatu - three people abantu munani - eight people
abantu bane - four people abantu cyenda - nine people
abantu batanu - five people abantu cumi - ten people

76. The class agreements:

Class 1 umwe babiri  Class 6 rumwe ebyiri
Class 2 umwe ibid  Class 7 kamwe tubiri
Class 3 imwe ebyiri  Class 8 bumwe abiri
Class 4 kimwe bibiri  Class 9 kumwe abiri
Class 5 rimwe abiri  Class 10 hamwe habiri

Note: For the 3rd and 6th class plural agreements another form is used: two - ebyiri, three - eshatu, four - enye, five - eshanu, six - esheshatu, seven - indwi, e.g. inka eshatu - three cows, inka ndwi. (Note that indwi with these classes loses the i, just as do the numbers for 8, 9, 10, when it follows the noun.)

The numerals from 8 to 10 lose their initial vowel when immediately following a noun, but if used by themselves they retain it. e.g. ibitabo munani - eight books

Mbese hari ibitabo byinshi? Oya, ni umunani gusa.
Are there many books? No, there are only eight.

77. Numbers always follow the nouns they modify.

78. For just counting when no object is involved, one says: rimwe, kabiri, gatatu, kane, gatanu, gatandatu, karindwi, umunani, icyenda, icumi.

Exercises:

Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. one stone 13. three jiggers
2. three fingers 14. one cow
3. six months 15. five francs
4. two cats 16. four hills
5. eight chairs 17. two arms
6. four teachers 18. three beds
7. ten boys 19. six hoes
8. five books 20. ten sheep
9. one door 21. one board
10. six dogs 22. eight schools
11. nine eggs 23. five little things (Use diminutive)
12. seven bees 24. six pupils
LESSON 38. Higher Numbers

Vocabulary

urusengero (or, isengero) - church (building) kubara - to count
itorero - church (people) gufata - to take (hold of), catch, seize
umwaka - year (pl. imyaka - years, crops) kwinjira - to enter (usually followed by mu)
imbeba - rat, mouse

79. Numbers 11 to 19 (First class agreements are used here.)

- cumi n’umwe - eleven cumi na batandatu - sixteen
- cumi na babiri - twelve cumi na barindwi - seventeen
- cumi na batatu - thirteen cumi n’umunani - eighteen
- cumi na bane - fourteen cumi n’icyenda - nineteen
- cumi na batanu - fifteen

Note: in these last two forms it could be: na munani, na cyenda

Here you see the class agreement comes in the word following na. e.g. abahungu cumi na bane - fourteen boys; amagi cumi n’ane - 14 eggs.

Observe that with eleven, though the noun is plural, -mwe has a singular prefix: e.g. iminsi cumi n’umwe - eleven days.

In numbers from 11 to 19, icumi loses the initial vowel i- even when it does not follow a noun. e.g. Mbese hari abantu benshi? Hari cumi’na babiri basa. Are there many people? There are only twelve.

80. The tens and hundreds.

- makuinyabiri - twenty mirongwirindwi - seventy
- mirongwitatu - thirty mirongwinani - eighty
- mirongwine - forty mirongo cyenda - ninety
- mirongwi’tanu - fifty ijana - one hundred
- miro–lgwitandatu - sixty magana a1Jiri - two hundred

Note: For 800 one may say: magana inani or magana munani.

In these forms just given, there is no change for agreement.

- 20 people - abantu makumyabiri
- 20 cows - inka makumyabiri
- But: 21 people - abantu makumyabiri n’umwe
- 34 sheep - intama mirongwitatu n’enyé
124 francs - amafaranga ijana na makumyabiri n’ane.

Observe the agreement as underlined in the last word. Note that na must be used between each segment of the number: 132 men - a’bagabo ijana na mirongwitatu na babiri.

**Exercises:**

**I. Translate into English:**


**II. Translate into Kinyarwanda: (Always write out the numbers.)**

1. Fifteen workmen are coming to build the house today. 2. The rich man has forty-three cows, and many goats. 3. We have four cats; they will catch many rats. 4. There are thirty-six trees in the teacher’s field. 5. The boys write on slates. They have fifty-one (slates). 6. Buy eighty-four eggs. 7. There are twelve sheep in our field. 8. The poor man has a debt of 465 francs. 9. Sixty-six workmen will build the church. 10. The boys will learn in school seventeen years.

**LESSON 39. -ngahe? How many? Vocabulary**

ingofero - hat (Sw.)
gutuma - to send (see par. 82)

umujura - thief
kwohereza (or, kohereza) - to send (see par. 82)

igisambo - thief
nyamara - but (see par. 83)

ijoro - night (5th cl.)
ahubwo - but (see par. 83)

kwumva (or, kumva) - to hear, feel, smell, taste,
derstand

("at night", or “in the night” or , “last night” is usually: nijoro.)

**81. -ngahe? - how many?** This word also takes class prefixes, but observe that they are the same as those of the numbers, not of descriptive adjectives. Only plural forms exist because the idea is plural. Like other adjectives it follows the noun it modifies. - ngahe? cannot be followed by the -ra- present, except when it is used for future time today.

Class 1 bangae?  Class 6 zingahe?
Class 2 ingahe?  Class 7 tungahe?
Class 3 zingahe?  Class 8 angahe?
Class 4 bingahe?  Class 9 angahe?
Class 5 angahe?  Class 10 hangahe?
e.g. Hari abantu bangae? - how many people are there?
Umukire afite inka zingahe? - how many cows does the rich man have?
Abigishwa bangaehe bafite ibitabo? - how many pupils have books?

Notice the word order. When “how many?” goes with the subject it is in the beginning of the sentence; when it goes with the object it is at the end.

82. Gutuma and kwohereza. Though both of these words mean “send”, they are not quite the same. Gutuma usually emphasizes the fact of a message. Kwohereza is to send anything not a message, or no emphasis on the message. Nzatuma umuntu i Kigali - I will send a person to Kigali (implying that he carries a message). Nzohereza imbaho i Kigali - I will send some boards to Kigali.

83. Ariko nyamara, ahubwo. You have now learned three words for “but”. In most instances, ariko and nyamara are interchangeable. Ahubwo means “but” when an idea of definite contrast is involved. e.g. Ntuzane ibitabo, ahubwo uzane intebe - Don’t bring books, but bring the chair.

Note: In the vocabulary you see that kwumva (kumva) is used for all the senses except seeing. However, its commonest meaning is “to hear”. Be cautious in using it for the other senses and observe how the Africans use it. Also note this use of it: Sinumva ikinyarwanda - I don’t understand Kinyarwanda.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. How many children are entering the church? 2. How many books will you send? 3. Thieves like to go in the night because there is darkness. 4. How many years will you teach here? I will teach six years. 5. Send twelve men to bring my boards. 6. Send a pupil to bring your letter to my house. 7. Do you (pl.) hear the drums? Where are they? 8. I hear the workmen. What are they doing? They are building a church. 9. In the night the old man hears a thief in his kraal. He gets (takes) his spear. 10. I want to put away our clothes now, but I don’t see well at (in) night.

LESSON 40. Review

I. Questions:

1. Explain the difference between: 1) kubanza and gutangira 2) gutuma and kwohereza 3) ariko and ahubwo.
2. What is the most common use of class 9?
3. Name all the words in class 9 which do not come under that use.
4. What one word belongs to class 10?
5. Give 3 uses of the ha- prefix.
6. How do you say “his face”?
7. Give 2 examples of vowel-stem verbs.
8. Count from one to twenty.
9. In what way do the numbers 8 to 10 differ from the others in their usage?
10. Give the word -ngahe with all of its class agreements.

II. Conjugate:

1. kwambara in the far future affirmative.
2. kwibagirwa in the present negative.
3. kwinjira in the far future negative.
4. kwihana in the -ra- present affirmative.
5. kwemera in the prefixless present affirmative.

III. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

2. One eye 27. How many books?
3. Three poor men 28. Thirteen mats
4. Fifty-four goats 29. Four thieves
5. Fourteen hoes 30. One rat
6. How many little things? (dimin.) 31. One stick of wood
7. Three years 32. Six skins of cows
8. Twenty-five chairs 33. Two keys
9. Thirty-six chickens 34. Seventy-eight months
10. One church 35. Ninety boats
11. Seventeen schools 36. Two beds
12. Four hundred thirty-two francs 37. Fifteen big holes
13. Forty-eight children 38. One hundred and sixty-six workmen
15. Ten hats 40. Seventy-two slates
16. One string 41. Forty-one sweet potatoes
17. Twenty-one fish 42. Ten sacks
18. Eighty-three sheep 43. Twenty-two (ears of) corn
19. Twelve hills 44. Five countries
20. Five places 45. One river
22. Four teeth 47. How many seeds?
23. Fifty-nine stones 48. Twenty-six spears
24. Thirty-one nights 49. Fourteen letters
25. Many beans 50. Many peas
LESSON 41. -ose - all, every

Vocabulary

umushumba - shepherd
umwungeri - shepherd (both of these sometimes used for “Pastor”)
igitangaza - surprising thing, miracle, amazing thing
izina - name (5th cl.)
gusinzira - to sleep
ryari? - when?
buri - every, each (not used with pl.)

84. -ose means “every” or “whole” in the singular, and in the plural it is “all”. Here it is with the class agreements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>wese</td>
<td>bose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>wose</td>
<td>yose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>yose</td>
<td>zose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 4</td>
<td>cyose</td>
<td>byose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 5</td>
<td>ryose</td>
<td>yose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 6</td>
<td>rwose</td>
<td>zose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 7</td>
<td>kose</td>
<td>twose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 8</td>
<td>bwose</td>
<td>yose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9</td>
<td>kose (kwose)</td>
<td>yose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 10</td>
<td>hose</td>
<td>hose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice the first class singular is wese, not wose.

Note: hose, by itself, often means “everywhere”

85. In the singular this word usually conveys the idea of entirety: inzu yose - the whole house; umunsi wose - the whole day (rather than “every day”). But it can mean “every”: umuntu wese - every person. In the plural it is “all”: inka zose - all the cows. Often when in English we would use the singular “every”, Kinyarwanda uses the plural: e.g. every day - iminsi yose.

Another way of saying “every” is with buri: e.g. buri munsi - every day. Observe that the initial vowel is dropped after buri.

86. Place in the sentence. -ose always follows the noun it modifies. If there should be several adjectives modifying the same noun, -ose must come last of all: abantu bose - all the people. Inka zacu nziza zose - all our nice cows.
87. Derived from this same stem are the words: **twese** - all of us; and **mwese** - all of you. Of course,” all of them” is **bose**.

88. **Ryari - When?** This is used only in asking questions. It usually comes at the end of the sentence or clause, though sometimes it immediately follows the verb. e.g. Uzajya i Kigali ryari? - when will you go to Kigali?

**Exercises:** I. Make **-ose** agree with the following words both singular and plural and translate into English:

1. itgokote 6. umusozi 11. umushumba 16. umujura
2. umukobwa 7. uruzi 12. izina 17. ingofero
3. imbwa 8. ahantu 13. igiti 19. umwaka
5. amashaza (pl.) 10. injangwe 15. umuti 20. ubwato

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. All people like to sleep all night (i. e. “in the whole night”). 2. All the miracles of Jesus are very great. 3. He is writing his whole name. 4. Every shepherd helps his sheep. 5. When will all the boys come back to school? 6. All girls like pretty clothes. 7. We will remember to worship God every day. 8. I want to see all of your big garden. 9. When will you (s.) remember to bring all my chickens? 10. Our little cat catches big rats. It’s amazing (a surprising thing).

**LESSON 42. “To wash”**

**Vocabulary**

kumesa - to wash (clothes) kwoga (koga) - to wash feet, swim, bathe
gukaraba - to wash hands kwoza (koza) - to wash (see par. 89)
kwiyuhagira - to bathe oneself gushobora - to be able to, can, may (usually followed by infinitive)
kuronga - to wash (vegetables)

89. Kinyarwanda does not have just one word that means “to wash” as in English. The word is determined by the thing to be washed.

Kwoza (koza) is more generally used than the others, for it is used for washing dishes, floor, windows, in fact, in most instances where there seems to be no specific word for that kind of washing, such as the other words given in this vocabulary. Kwoga (koga) is more often used for “swim” than for “wash”. Gukaraba does not need to be followed by a word for “hands”. However, you may hear it used for washing arms, and even the face.

90. Imperative of vowel-stem verbs. These follow the regular rule: just the stem of the word. Thus: Oza amasahane - wash the dishes. Andika izina ryawe - write your name.

**Exercises:**
I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Wash all my clothes today.  2. I do not want cold (akonje) water; I want to take a bath.  3. Wash the floor well in the whole house today.  4. You (pl.) can remember to wash (your) hands well every day.  5. When will you (pl.) wash all the tables in the school?  6. The boys like to swim in the river.  7. The girls are washing all the peas and beans in clean water.  8. Cats don’t wash in water.  9. Do you wash your face in the morning every day?  10. Wash all the dirty dishes now.

LESSON 43. -ndi - other

Vocabulary

- igihe - time, at the time when
- amakuba - troubles (no sing.)
- amagorwa - difficulties, troubles
- ahari - perhaps
- inshuti - friend
- igisebe - ulcer, sore, wound
- guhemba - to pay (for work done, not an article)

91. -ndi - other, another This word has for its prefix the characteristic letter(s) of the class, or the initial vowel of the class. In most cases it is just like the noun prefix. This adjective differs from the others learned thus far, in that it precedes the noun it modifies. Here it is given with a noun of each class, singular and plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>undi mugabo - another man</td>
<td>abandi bantu - other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>undi murima - another garden</td>
<td>indi migozi - other ropes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>indi nka - another cow</td>
<td>izindi mbuto - other seeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ikindi gitabo - another book</td>
<td>ibindi bihugu - other countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>irindi shuri - another school</td>
<td>andi magambo - other words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>urundi ruzi - another river</td>
<td>izindi mba ho - other boards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>akandi kana - another small child</td>
<td>utundi tuntu - other little things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ubundi bwato - another boat</td>
<td>andi mariri - other beds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>ukundi kuboko - another arm</td>
<td>andi mezi - other months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ahandi hantu - another place</td>
<td>ahandi hantu - other places (ahandi by itself is “elsewhere”)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notice that this adjective causes the initial vowel of the noun following to be dropped. It is not: abandi abantu, but abandi bantu.

Note: This word can also be used for "more". e.g. Mfite ibiti bitatu, nyamara ndashaka ibindi bibiri - I have three trees, but I want two more.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The poor man has few francs and he has many other troubles. 2. We will help the girls another time. 3. A friend likes to help other people (at) all times. 4. The teacher is looking for many more pupils. 5. We want to hear the Word of God today. Perhaps we shall not receive another opportunity. 6. I don’t like your hat; can’t you get another? 7. You (s.) can pay five workmen today; you will pay the others another month. 8. Find (look for) another cat, because we have a lot of rats. 9. The teacher is going to Cyangugu to buy (some) more song books (= books of songs). 10. The shepherd has ninety-nine sheep, but he is looking for the other one.

LESSON 44. Some Verbs

Vocabulary

gusaba - to ask for, beg, pray  
kubaza - to ask (a question)

gusubira - to repeat, do again  
kwongera - to repeat, do again, add more

wendá, yenda - perhaps (same as ahari)  
nabi - badly (adverb)

isandugu (isanduka) - box (3rd cl. sing. 5th pl.) (Sw.)

92. Gusubira. "to repeat, do again". This is the same as gusubira meaning "to go back". It is followed by the infinitive in a statement. It is followed by the subjunctive as the second of two commands (see par. 133). Arasubira kwandika - he is writing again. Subira uvuge - say again.

Kwongera and gusubira are interchangeable for the idea of "repeat", but kwongera also is used for "to add more".

Sinzongera kwibagirwa - I won’t forget again.  
Sinzasubira kwibagirwa - I won’t forget again.  
Ongera umunyu - add some salt (or, some more salt).
93. **Gusaba and kubaza.** Though both of these words mean “to ask” they are not used interchangeably. **Kubaza** is only to ask a question, e.g. Jya kubaza umwigisha - go to ask the teacher.

But **gusaba** is to ask for something, or to ask a favor. In this latter sense it means “to pray”, when asking God for something; but prayer in the sense of “worship” is **gusenga**.

Ndasaba agatambaro - I am asking for a little cloth.
Ndasaba umuntu kujiya i Kigali - I am asking a person to go to Kigali.
Arajya gUsaba umusaza kuza hano - he is going to ask the old man to come here.
Tuzabaza umwigisha amazina y’abana - We will ask the teacher the children’s names.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The water (insert yo) in the river is bad; we will look again for water. 2. I am asking all the boys to bring their books tomorrow; perhaps they will remember. 3. The boy’s parents are returning to their home, but he (ariko we) is staying at school. 4. Ask again for three more books. 5. Put five other slates in the box. 6. I want to hear again the words of the Savior. 7. Ask the new teacher his name. I can’t; I don’t speak his language. 8. The teacher does not praise his pupils, because they work badly. 9. When will you pay the workmen? I’ll ask the teacher. 10. Where are the tools? I don’t remember. Perhaps they are in the box.

**LESSON 45. Verb -zi - to know**

**Vocabulary**

impumyi - blind person  inyota - thirst
umurizo - tail  kumenya - to know, know how
ihembe (5th cl.) - horn (animal) ko - that (conjunction introducing dependent clause) (see par. 54)

94. **Verb -zi, to know, know how.** This is another defective verb. It has only present forms, and no infinitive. For its missing parts use kumenya.

Here is the -ra- present of -zi:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ndazi - I know</td>
<td>sinzi - I don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turazi - we know</td>
<td>ntituzi - we don’t know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
urazi - you know murazi - you know ntuzi - you don’t know ntimuzi - you don’t know arazi - he knows barazi - they know ntazi - he doesn’t know ntibazi - they don’t know

The prefixless present also exists: nzi, uzi, azi, tuzi, muzi, bazi.

95. Now you have learned the three most important defective verbs: -ri, -fite, -zi. Remember to use these whenever possible. Their substitutes: kuba, kugira, kumenya, are to be used only when no suitable form exists of the defective verb.

96. One often hears: ndabizi (I know) or sindabizi (simbizi) - (I don’t know). The "bi" in this word is an object pronoun meaning “it” or “them”, which you will learn later.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Put all the dishes on the table. 2. The children don’t know the path. J. The blind man cannot see the Word of God, but he can hear and he can know the love of Jesus. 4. I don’t know your name. 5. The blind man feels the tail and horns of the cow. 6. Do you (s.) know how to cook fish? No, I don’t know, but I’ll ask my parent. 7. The teacher is teaching the children a new song. He knows how to sing very well. 8. The goat’s tail and horns are short. 9. Do you (s.) know our hill? It is very high. 10. Our teacher knows many languages.

LESSON 46. Adjective Chart

Vocabulary

imbaraga- strength (usually pl.)
gukizwa - to be saved, healed, cured
nonaha - now, right now
umbabarire - excuse me, I’m sorry, forgive me (I hurt you physically or otherwise)

umunyabyaha - sinner
gutsinda - to defeat, conquer
bambe, nako - excuse me (I misspoke myself)
komera - excuse me (when causing or observing physical harm or near accident)

N.B. Before beginning these exercises, study the adjective chart given below, which is is good review of the adjectives studied.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The man has much faith; he will be saved. 2. Many sinners will be saved because they will hear the Word of God and will confess their sins and will believe Jesus. 3. I have only a little (use “few”) strength, but I like to work. 4. Jesus will help His people to defeat Satan and sin. 5. The rich man has many houses in his kraal (homestead); and he has eighty-four cows. 6. How many little stones (use diminutive) do you have? I have thirty-six. Look for (some) more. 7. Our friends are bathing in the river. 8. Write all the names of the pupils in my book. 9. We have much peace and joy because Jesus conquers sin. 10. How many people are in our new big church?

97. Adjective Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>DESC. ADJ.</th>
<th>NUMERAL</th>
<th>POSS. ADJ.</th>
<th>-OSE</th>
<th>-NGAHE?</th>
<th>-NDI</th>
<th>-HE?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sing.</td>
<td>mubi</td>
<td>umwe</td>
<td>wanjye</td>
<td>wese</td>
<td>undi</td>
<td>uwuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>babi</td>
<td>babiri</td>
<td>banjye</td>
<td>bose</td>
<td>bangaje</td>
<td>abandi</td>
<td>abahe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sing.</td>
<td>mubi</td>
<td>umwe</td>
<td>wanjye</td>
<td>wose</td>
<td>undi</td>
<td>uwuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>mibi</td>
<td>ibiri</td>
<td>yanjye</td>
<td>yose</td>
<td>indi</td>
<td>iyih</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sing.</td>
<td>mbi</td>
<td>imwe</td>
<td>yanjye</td>
<td>yose</td>
<td>indi</td>
<td>iyih</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>mbi</td>
<td>ebyiri</td>
<td>zanjye</td>
<td>zose</td>
<td>zingahe</td>
<td>izindi</td>
<td>izihe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sing.</td>
<td>kibi</td>
<td>kimwe</td>
<td>cyanjye</td>
<td>cyose</td>
<td>inkindi</td>
<td>ikihe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>bibi</td>
<td>bibiri</td>
<td>byanjye</td>
<td>byose</td>
<td>bingahe</td>
<td>ibindi</td>
<td>ibih</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. sing.</td>
<td>ribi</td>
<td>rimwe</td>
<td>ryanjye</td>
<td>ryose</td>
<td>urundi</td>
<td>uruhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>mabi</td>
<td>abiri</td>
<td>yanjye</td>
<td>yose</td>
<td>angahe</td>
<td>andi</td>
<td>ayah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sing.</td>
<td>rubi</td>
<td>rumwe</td>
<td>rwanjye</td>
<td>rwose</td>
<td>urundi</td>
<td>uruhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>mbi</td>
<td>ebyiri</td>
<td>zanjye</td>
<td>zose</td>
<td>zingahe</td>
<td>izindi</td>
<td>izihe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. sing.</td>
<td>kubi</td>
<td>kumwe</td>
<td>kwanjye</td>
<td>kose</td>
<td>akandi</td>
<td>akahe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>tubi</td>
<td>tubiri</td>
<td>twanjye</td>
<td>twose</td>
<td>tungahe</td>
<td>utundi</td>
<td>utuhe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sing.</td>
<td>bubu</td>
<td>bumwe</td>
<td>bwanjye</td>
<td>bwose</td>
<td>ubundi</td>
<td>ubuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>mabi</td>
<td>abiri</td>
<td>yanjye</td>
<td>yose</td>
<td>angahe</td>
<td>andi</td>
<td>ayah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. sing.</td>
<td>kubi</td>
<td>kumwe</td>
<td>kwanjye</td>
<td>k(w)ose</td>
<td>ukundi</td>
<td>ukuhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>mabi</td>
<td>abiri</td>
<td>yanjye</td>
<td>yose</td>
<td>angahe</td>
<td>andi</td>
<td>ayah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. sing.</td>
<td>habi</td>
<td>hamwe</td>
<td>hanjye</td>
<td>hose</td>
<td>ahandi</td>
<td>he?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>habi</td>
<td>habiri</td>
<td>hanjye</td>
<td>hose</td>
<td>hangahe</td>
<td>ahandi</td>
<td>he?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B. The word -he? in the preceding table you will study later. He? is an adverb, meaning “where?”.
LESSON 47. Word Order

Vocabulary

umuzungu - white person, European
rwose - completely, very much
hafi - near (Note: kure and hafi must be followed by ya before a noun or pronoun.)
kubanguka - to hurry (to go)
kure - far, far away

When kure and hafi are followed by a pronoun, the possessive adjective is used e.g., hafi yanjye - near me. With a noun: hafi y’inzu - near the house.

98. Order of adjectives.

1) You have already learned that the possessive adjective must follow immediately the noun it modifies, no matter how many other adjectives there may be.
2) Also, you have learned that -ndi - other, must precede the noun it modifies, and it removes the initial vowel of the noun. e.g. abandi bantu benshi - many other people.
3) The adjective -ngahe - how many? follows all other adjectives. e.g. abandi bahungu banini bangahe? - how many other big boys?
4) If several descriptive adjectives modify one noun, the order is not important, although in some localities it seems to be preferred that adjectives of quantity, such as -inshi and -ke (keya) come after the other descriptive adjectives. e.g. inka zacu nini nyinshi - our many big cows.
5) The adjective -ose - all, preferably follows other adjectives. e.g. ibiti bye binini byose - all his big trees
6) The numeral adjectives usually follow any other descriptive adjectives, though it is not absolutely essential that they do, e.g. abana be bato babiri - his two small children.

99. A further note about some adjectives. -inshi and -ke (-keya) mean "many" and "few", but in their singular forms they are used of things which are uncountable or abstract, e.g. ifu nyinshi - much flour; umuyaga myinshi - a strong wind (never say umuyaga munini or mutoya); umunyu mufe - a little salt; kwizera guke - a little faith.

100. Position of adverbs. Most adverbs follow the word they modify, though some prefer to put cyane at the end of the sentence if there are not too many words between it and the verb it modifies. e.g. A good man works hard - Umugabo mwiza arakora cyane. A very good man works - Umugabo mwiza cyane arakora.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The rich man has very many nice large cows. 2. Put the chair on the floor near my small table. 3. Hurry to go to school; the other boys are there (aho). 4. Perhaps we will receive three other good books soon. 5. Your three little children are over there near the school. 6. Where are all my nice new clothes? They are in your box. 7. There is another long, wide river near our hill. 8. The girls are cooking a few small fish on the stove. 9. Minani’s child has a few more jiggers in his feet. 10. Our wonderful living Savior has much love and mercy.

LESSON 48. Personal Pronouns

Vocabulary

urupfu - death (no pl.) kubabarira - to forgive
ubushobozzi - power (no pl.) kugwa - to fall
ubwami - kingdom (no pl.) gupfa - to die

101. Personal pronouns. Though the personal pronouns as subjects do not have to be, expressed other than by the personal prefixes (i.e. ndagenda - n is the personal prefix), these pronouns exist and are needed in many instances.

jyewe (sometimes jye) - I, me twabwe - we, Us (sometimes twe)
wowe (we) - you (s’) mwebwe - you (pl.) (sometimes mwe)
we - he, him, she, her bo - they, them

The we in parentheses after wowe is to indicate that sometimes this pronoun is simply we. The third person singular wel looks the same as this short form of the 2nd person, but in pronunciation it is clipped off a bit shorter than the 2nd person. Get an African to say both sounds for you.

Caution: Do not try to use these words as objects of verbs. One would never say “ndabona wowe” for “I see you”. You will learn later how to say that correctly.

These pronouns may be used as subjects of verbs when emphasis is desired; e.g. Jyewe nzaguma aha ariko wowe uzagenda - I shall stay here, but you will go.

102. Muri and kuri. The prepositions mu and ku change to muri and kuri before: 1) proper names, 2) most words beginning with consonants, 3) the personal pronouns, 4) the demonstratives (these will be taught in a later lesson). e.g. muri Yesu - in Jesus kuri twe - to us, unto us

Exceptions: 1) With certain names of places they remain mu and ku. e.g. mu Kirambo is the form used for “at Kirambo”.

2) Before infinitives it does not change. e.g. ndi mu gusoma - I am reading right now. This form is often used to express the idea of “to be in the act of ...” like the French “en train de.”
Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Jesus does not want sin in His people; He will forgive everyone his sins. 2. Come to Jesus; He wants to save every person. 3. We can all receive new life in Jesus, but death is in Satan. 4. You (s., emphasis) are you abiding (staying) in Jesus? Do you have His peace in your heart? 5. Send a letter to Matayo. 6. Among you (pl.) there are rich people and poor people, men and women. 7. Come to me; I will buy your eggs. 8. We (emphasis) want to have power (insert bwo) to defeat sin and (no) to enter the kingdom of God. 9. The old man will die soon; we want to go to him to speak words of love. 10. Do you (pl.) see the people over there? My child is among them.

LESSON 49. Review

I. Questions:

1. Where does ryari come in the sentence? What does it mean?
2. What word is used for “to wash”: 1) clothes, 2) dishes, 3) hands, 4) floor 5) feet, 6) vegetables, 7) whole body?
3. Give the imperative of: kwandika, kwoza, kwizera (and the meanings).
4. Where does -ndi come in the sentence? What does it mean? What effect does it have on the noun accompanying it?
5. Explain the difference between gusaba and kubaza.
6. What verb supplies the missing parts of -zi? What does -zi mean? What tenses do you know of this verb?
7. Where does -ngahe come in the sentence? What does it mean? Give a sentence using it.
8. When may -inshi and -ke be used in the singular?
9. Where do most adverbs come in the sentence?
10. Give the six personal pronouns.
11. When do mu and ku change to muri and kuri (4 occasions)?

II. Make the adjectives: -ose, -ngahe, -ndi, -njye, -bi, and the numerals (using “one” and “two” only) agree with the following words. Give both the singular and plural whenever possible.

1. umushumba 4. akana
2. umuti 5. igisebe
3. ihene 6. ubuntu
LESSON 50. Reading Lesson

Vocabulary

kujyana - to take with one, go with
kureba - to look at, look, see (in sense of “go to see”)
gushuka - to deceive
kugira ngo - to think that, suppose that, so that, in order
that

kwica - to kill
guhenda - to overcharge, extort, be expensive
kurira - to cry, weep

Note: kujyana igitabo - to take a book (with); kujyana na Petero - to go with Peter

Read the following aloud to an African and have him (her) help you with pronunciation. Then translate (present verbs may be translated as past):

Yosefu na Bene Se (his brothers)

Umunsì umwe Yakobo atuma Yosefu, umuhungu we, kureba bene se cumi n’umwe, kuko bajya kure kujyana inka n’ihene zabo. Bene se babona Yosefu baravuga, bati (do not translate bati, nor ati, as you see it later). Ntidukunda Yosefu, tumwice (let us kill him). Umwe mukuru, Reyubeni, aravuga, ati Oya, tumushyire (mu is “him”) mu cyobo. Reyubeni ashaka gukiza Yosefu, nyamara abandi bene se baranga rwose. Abandi bene se bafata imyenda ya Yosefu kugira ngo bayohereze (so that they might send them) kuri se (their father). Vuba haza abantu benshi. Bene se ba Yosefu baramufata (mu= him) baramugura. Abandi bantu bamujyana mu gihugu cya Egiputa. Bene se bashyira amaraso y’ihene ku myenda ye kuko bashaka gushuka Yakobo. Bohereza imyenda ya Yosefu kuri Yakobo. Baravuga, bati Reba neza. Mbese ni imyenda ya Yosefu? Yakobo areba imyenda, agira ngo Yosefu yishwe (was killed) n’inyamaswa (na can mean “by”). Ararira cyane.
LESSON 51. Ordinary Past Tense

Vocabulary

kunywa (nyoye) - to drink   ibiryo - food  
gucana (canye) - to light (fire, lamp)  kare - early   
kurya (riye) - to eat  

103. Ordinary Past Tense. All the tenses dealt with thus far were formed by changes in the prefix. But the past tenses are formed by changing the suffix as well as the prefix. There are some rules to go by for forming these suffixes, but since so many verbs are irregular in this respect, the past stem will be given with all verbs from now on.

Here are the past stems of a few verbs that you have learned:

- gukora -koze kuvuga -vuze  
- kugenda -giye kuzana -zanye  
- kujya -giye  

Now note the conjugation:

- nakoze - I worked  
- twakoze - we worked  
- wakoze - you (s.) worked  
- mwakoze - you (pl.) worked  
- yakoze - he, she worked  
- bakoze - they worked

The rule for forming this tense is: personal prefix + a (which is the tense sign), + past stem of verb: n - a - koze

Note the contraction: u-a-koze becomes wakoze; a-a-koze becomes yakoze; tu-a-koze becomes twakoze, etc.

104. The main use of this tense is to express that which has happened earlier in the same day; it may also be used for that which happened at a previous time, but the tone is different.
Past today (if nothing follows the verb)

nakoze twakoze
wakoze mwakoze The tone on a is long and low.
yakoze bakoze

If something follows the verb (other than cyane or ati), the singular takes a short a, but it is still a low tone, whether long or short.

nakoze imirimo twakoz’e imirimo
wakoze imirimo mwakoze imirimo
yakoze imirimo bakoze imirimo

Past time before today: The form is the same but the tone is high. (See par. 141)

I. Translate into English


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Two boys worked well in the garden but the other three worked badly. 2. You (pl.) drank much dirty water. 3. The children brought their books to school today because they want to read. 4. The girl brought wood and she lit a big fire. 5. We eat meat and beans and bananas, and we drank much water. 6. I worked hard yesterday, and I brought my food. 7. What did you (s.) say? I said that I will come back tomorrow. 8. The girls made a fire because they want to cook (some) meat and (some) sweet potatoes. 9. Where did you (pl.) go yesterday? We went to Cyangugu to buy (some) food. 10. I think that Mary brought a new chair to school.

LESSON 52. Rules for Past Endings

Vocabulary

umusore - young man (unmarried) inkumi - young lady (unmarried)
ingurube - pig kuvura (ye) - to treat (sickness), to doctor
umuganga - doctor kwa - to (before name of person as doctor, teacher, etc.)

105. In forming the past stems there are certain rules to go by, but as stated before, there are many irregularities.
Here in the first column are the final syllables of present stems; in the second column are the forms to which these stems regularly change for the past; in the third column are examples.

- ba -bye guhemba -hembye, kureba -rebye
- da, ga -ze gukunda -kunze, kuvuga -vuze
- ha -shye kwubaha -ubashye
- ka -tse guteka -tetse
- ma -mye gusoma -somye
- na -nye, nnye kubona -bonye, gukena -kennye
- nya -ntje (sometimes -nye) kugabanya -gabanije, kumenya -menye
- ra (see note par. 106)
- sa -she kumesa -meshe
- ta -se (sometimes -she) gukubita -kubise, gufata -fashe
- sha -shije, -sheje, -hije, -heje kwigisha -igishije, kunesha -nesheje
- shya -shije, -sheje, -hije, -heje gushyushya -shyuhije, kureshya -resheje
- za -je, -jjie, -jeje kuza -je, gukiza -kijije, kweza -ejeje

Note: A clue to determine whether the past suffix will contain i or e can be found in the A I U rule, paragraph 157.

106. There are several things that may happen to the suffix -ra.

1. In stems of two syllables, when the first of these is long, the -ra changes to -rye. e.g. rutera -teye kuvura -vuye
2. In stems of two syllables, when the first of these is short, the -ra changes to -ze. e.g. kugura -guze kurira -rize gushyira -shyize
3. In stems of more than two syllables the -ra changes to -ye, if, the preceding syllable is short. e.g. kwinjira -injiye, kubabarira -babariye
4. Words of more than two syllables which end in -ora or -era (a long vowel) often have their past stem in -iriye or -ereye. gusinzira -sinziriye, kurorera -rorereye. However, the vowel that is long in the present stem becomes short in the past.

Note: Verbs of one syllable stem follow no regular rule. All present stems end in a, except those of defective verbs, and all past stems end in e.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda: (Do not try to find a word for “did” - that is just the English way of making a question past.)

1. The doctor treated many people today; he knows much wisdom. (This sounds queer in English, but is the way it is expressed in Kinyarwanda.) 2. I put the seeds in the box. Where are they now? 3. Did you (pl.) see the teacher’s books? 4. Did you (s.) read the whole book of John today? 5. Jesus saved many people because they prayed (to) God. 6. We knew that you (pl.) came because we saw the children. 7. The thief deceived the rich man and took his things at (in) night. 8. The young man wanted to go with his friend. 9. The girls washed their clothes in the river. 10. The women cooked a lot of (many) corn and sweet potatoes.

LESSON 53. Past Verb Endings

(Instead of a new vocabulary this time we give a table of all the verbs given thus far, with their past stems. Memorize as many of them as possible for this lesson, and the remainder for the vocabulary work in the following lesson.)

107.

- kwambara - ambaye - fite no past
- kwandika - anditse kugaruka - garutse
- kwanga - anze kugenda - giyeye
- kuba - baye kugera - geze
- kubabarira - babariye kugira - gize
- kubanguka - bangutse kuguma - gumye
- kubanza - banje kugwa - guye
- kubara - baze kugurisha - gurishije
- kubaza - bajiye kugwa - guye
- kubika - bitse guhemba - hembye
- kubona - bonye guhenda - henze
- gucana - canye guhinga - hinze
- kwemera - emeye kwibagirwa - ibagiwe
- kwereka - eretse kwibuka - ibutse
- gufasha - fashije kwica - ishe
- gufata - fashe kwiga - ize
- kwigisha - igishije kuririmba - ririmbye
- kwhana - hannya kuironga - ronze
- kwinjira - injiye kurya - riye
- kwiyyuhagira - iyuhagiye gusaba - sabye
- kwizera - izeye gusenga - senze
- kujiya - giye gushaka - shatse
- kujiyana - jyanye gushima - shimye
- kujugunya - jugunye gushobora - shoboye
gukaraba -karabye  gushuka -shutse

gukiza -kijije  gushyira -shyize

gukizwa -kijijwe  gusinzira -sinzirye

gukora -koze  gusoma -somye

gukubura -kubuye  gusubira -subiye

gukunda -kunze  gutangira -tangiye

kumenya -menye  gutsinda -tsinze

kumesa -meshe  gutuma -tumye

kunywa -nyoye  kwubaka -ubatse

kwoga -oze  kwumva -umvise

kwohereza -ohereje  kuva -vuye

kwongera -ongeye  kuvuga -vuze

kwoza -ogeje  kuvura -vuye

gupfa -pfuye  kuza -je

kureba -rebye  kuzana -zanye

-ri  no past

kurira -rize

Note that in most instances it is only the last two letters of the stem which change. In
the vocabularies from now on only the syllable which is changed will be shown, except
where the whole stem changes.

In the above list the verbs whose stems begin with o or u have been given with kw-
as the infinitive, but remember that these-are often written without the w, koza
rather than kwoza, kumva rather than kwumva.

No further grammar is given in this lesson. Spend your time learning these past
suffixes.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

yakijije Abanyarwanda benshi nyamara dushaka ko abandi benshi bakizwa. 4. Nahembye
abakozi amafaranga magana inani na mirongwine n’abiri. 5. Twagarutse hano kuko dushaka
kwumva Ijambo ry’Imana. 6. Abana baje mu ishuri, ariko batatu bagumye hanze. 7. Mbese
Twafashe imbeba eshatu njoro. 10. Mbese waguze iki? Naguze inyama n’amavuta.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. We helped our teacher today because he has much work. 2. Did you (pl.) sleep well in the
night? 3. The child cried all day because he wanted food. 4. I counted all the men and women in
church yesterday; I saw 83 men and 97 women (Write out numbers). 5. Our teachers went home
(this) morning. 6. Where did you (s.) put away the dishes? I put ten in a box. 7. Jesus forgave Paul all his sins. He is a wonderful Savior. 8. What did you do today? 9. We sang many songs in church yesterday. I like to sing. 10. We went with the young men to look at the big river.

LESSON 54. Ordinary Past (continued)

In this lesson, instead of a new vocabulary, continue memorizing the past suffixes of verbs given in Lesson 53.

108. For forming this past tense in agreements with nouns of classes other than first, it is important to remember the rules for vowel and consonant change. Here are some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>wagiye</td>
<td>yagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>yagiye</td>
<td>zagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>cyagiye</td>
<td>byagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>ryagiye</td>
<td>yagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>rwagiye</td>
<td>zagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>kagiye</td>
<td>twagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>bwagiye</td>
<td>yagiye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>kwagiye</td>
<td>yagiye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

109. **Vowel stems in past.** For the conjugation of vowel-stem verbs in the ordinary past, remember that **a** before other vowels drops out. Thus:

- nibagiwe - I forgot
- yubatse - he built
- bemeye - they agreed
- twogeje - we washed
- mwanditse - you (pl.) wrote

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Two blind men went to the church to pray. 2. Thieves entered the house in the night because the man was sleeping hard (cyane). 3. The old man’s workmen built a big house in his kraal. 4. I wrote the names of all the girls in the school. 5. The new books fell on the floor. 6. The old man died yesterday. 7. Did you (pl.) hear the words of the teacher? 8. Sin brought death to all
people. 9. Did you (s.) remember to send three men to Kigali to buy food? 10. We repented of all our sins and Jesus came into our hearts.

LESSON 55. Negative of Ordinary Past

Vocabulary

iteraniro (5th) - meeting, crowd  
gukurikira - to follow  
urupapuro - paper, page  
cyangwa - or  
ilaramu - pencil (3rd sing., pl. may be 3rd or 5th)

110. The negative of the ordinary past is simply the negative prefix, personal prefix, tense sign, and past stem: nti - tw - a - koze.

sinagiye - I didn’t go  
nitwagiye - we didn’t go  
nitiwagiye - you didn’t go  
nitimagiye - you didn’t go  
niyagiye - he didn’t go  
nitibagiye - they didn’t go

The same rule applies for vowel-stem verbs: sinogeje - I didn’t wash, ntibubatse - they didn’t build.

With other classes: inka ntizagiye - the cows didn’t go

111. Remember that kuva is usually followed by mu or ku (par. 11), though it may not, always be, e.g. wavuye he? navuye mu ishuri - where did you come from? I came from school. (This implies that one has been in the school. If you said, “Navuye ku ishuri,” you would mean, “I came from the area around the school.”

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The boys didn’t come from the school; they came from church. 2. The children wrote on all the paper and we didn’t have any other. 3. The blind men fell; they couldn’t see the path. 4. Didn’t you (s.) want to cook the sweet potatoes in the evening yesterday, or did you forget? 5. The young men did not eat all the beans. 6. We didn’t ask the teacher to write a letter because he is very busy (= has much work). 7. Didn’t you (pl.) bathe this morning? Your legs are very
dirty. 8. They sang two songs at church, but I didn’t sing. 9. Didn’t the young girls agree to hoe in our garden today? 10. The dog didn’t look at the cat; it looked for food.

LESSON 56. Past of -ri; -ga tense

Vocabulary

umufundi (Sw.) - mason, skilled workman  akabande - valley

gutaha (shye) - to go home, quit work  gusura (ye) - to visit, go to visit

kurangiza (je) - to finish (tr.)  kuzamuka (tse) - to go up (as hill)

kumanuka (tse) - to go down

112. For the past of -ri there is no change in the suffix; it is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nari</td>
<td>I was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twari</td>
<td>we were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wari</td>
<td>you (s.) were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mwari</td>
<td>you (pl.) were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yari</td>
<td>he, she was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tari</td>
<td>they were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no other simple past tense for -ri, so this form is used whenever any past time of -ri is expressed.

For agreement with nouns of other classes this verb follows the regular rules (see par. 108).

113. The negative is the same with, of course, the negative prefix: sinari, ntiwari, ntiyari, etc.

114. -ga tense. The suffix -ga is added to the present stem of a verb with a past prefix:

1) To express continuous past action, e.g. I was hoeing - nahingaga, I was not hoeing - sinahingaga
2) To express habitual past action. I liked to learn - nakundaga kwiga.
3) Past time after the word igihe: Nakubonye igihe wavaga mu ishuri - I saw you when you came from school. Naje igihe wandikaga - I came while you were writing.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The children went up the hill this morning but they came back. Now they are in school. 2. The teacher’s wife was not in church yesterday. 3. The mason was building a house, then (maze) he went to Butare. 4. Were you (s.) at school yesterday? Where were you? I was working in my field. 5. The young girls used to (= habitual past) go down to dig in the valley. 6. The workmen have quit work, but the masons are here in the yard (kraal). 7. I was at your (pl.) place yesterday but you were not at home. 8. The rats were many in our Kraal, but we got a cat; it caught four in the night. 9. The poor man forgot his troubles, because he found much joy in Jesus. 10. You (s.) didn’t wear your new clothes today. Where are they?

LESSON 57. Object Pronouns

Vocabulary

gucungura (ye) - to redeem  gutegeka (tse) - to rule, govern, command
kurushya (hije) - to trouble, be difficult  guha (haye) - to give, give to
ghana (nnye) - to punish  ghnana (nye) - to give to each other

115. **Personal object pronouns.** These are expressed by little particles inserted in the verb between the tense sign and the verb stem. These particles are:

- **n (or m) - me**
- **tu (du) - us**
- **ku (gu) - you (s.)**
- **ba - you (pl.)**
- **mu - him, her**
- **ba - them**

e.g. *ndakubona* - I see you (s.), *Imana iratubabarira* - God forgives us, *tiramushima* - we praise him, *irankunda* - He loves me.

(For the use of **gu** or **ku**, and **du or tu**, remember the change-down rule in par. 21; and for the use of **m** for **n**, the rule in par. 14.)

116. These object pronouns are the same whether used as direct or indirect objects.

e.g. I give you the book, is: *Ndaguha igitabo*, though “you” here is an indirect object. As indicated in par. 101, one would not say “Ndabona wowo” for “I see you”. However, for special emphasis one might say, “Ndakubona wowo.”- I see you, you there!”

Note: The **k** or **t** of an object pronoun changes according to the change-down rule, but the **k** or **t** of a syllable preceding the object pronoun is not changed by it. Thus: *ndagusaba, kukubona*.

Whenever an object pronoun intervenes between an infinitive prefix and the stem, the infinitive prefix reverts to **ku**, even though originally it may have been **-gu** or **kw**.

117. **Kurushya.** This is often used with impersonal prefixes (4th class):

- Biraruhije - it is difficult (for tense see par. 129).
- Byamuruhije - it was difficult for him.
Note 1: Observe the imperative of guha: “give me” is mpa. The stem is only -ha, of which the h changes to p because of the preceding m. To be polite one sometimes says: mpa se - please give me.

Note 2: the suffix -nnye (as, -hannya) is pronounced rather like n+ng (as in “ring”) + ye. Work on this sound with an African.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Where were you (pl.) yesterday? I did not see you the whole day. 2. The pupil is bad; his teacher cannot govern him. 3. I praise God because He saved me and He gave me peace and joy. 4. It is difficult for him to learn because he has much other work. 5. Jesus helps us every day to do His work; we praise Him with (in) all our hearts. 6. Andrew’s (Andereya) children are good; he governs them well. 7. What do you (s.) want? I paid you yesterday. 8. It was difficult for us to finish our work. Will you help us? 9. Where were you (pl.)? Your parents were looking everywhere for you. 10. We saw you (s.) yesterday near the old man’s kraal.

LESSON 58. Object Pronouns (continued)

Vocabulary

kubeshya (shye) - to lie, lie to, deceive
kwiba (bye) - to steal, steal from
gukubita (se) - to hit, strike, beat
kureka (tse) - to leave, forsake, stop (int.), allow (tr.) (see par. 136)

Note: Use of kubeshya: arambeshya - he is lying to me. “He is lying about me” requires the prepositional ending, see par. 200. Kwiba aranyiba - he is stealing from me. (for ny, see par. 119)

118. The object pronoun must agree with the noun it refers to in class and number. In the previous lesson, you learned the personal object pronouns. Now, here are the pronouns for each of the classes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 1</th>
<th>Class 2</th>
<th>Class 3</th>
<th>Class 4</th>
<th>Class 5</th>
<th>Class 6</th>
<th>Class 7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>ru</td>
<td>zi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sing. Pl. Sing. Plur.
Class 3 yi  zi Class 8 bu  ya
Class 4 ki  bi Class 9 ku  ya
Class 5 ri  ya Class 10 ha  ha

e.g. Ufite igitabo? Yee, ndagifite. Do you have the book? Yes, I have it. Habonye
ahantu? Yee, nahabonye. Did you see the place? Yes, I saw it. Urufunguzo ruri he?
Ararufite. Where is the key? He has it.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

1. Mbese waretse ibyaha byawe byose? Yee, nabiretse kera (long ago). 2. Imbwayagize nabi
cyane; umusore yayikubise. 3. Wabonye igitabo gishya? Ndakireba ubu. 4. Umusore ni
umunyabyaha; akunda kubeshya, kandi ejo yibye amafaranga cumi; ariko azayazana. 5.
kuyavuga. 7. Nabahaye imirimo myinshi. Mwayirangije yose? 8. Wacanye umuriro? Oya,
Mariya yawucanye. 9. Wakoze iminsi ingahe mu murima? Sinayibaze. 10. Naguhaye utwuma
tubiri. Turi he? Natubitse mu isandugu.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Have you seen my new house? No, I will look at it tomorrow. 2. What did you give the cat? I
gave it milk. 3. I gave you (some) new books. Did you bring them? 4. The boy stole the paper;
buts he refuses to bring it. 5. Did you steal the European’s dog? No, I bought it. 6. Where did
you buy the salt? I bought it at Eutare. 7. We bought a new bed; my wife liked (praised) it very
much. 8. I didn’t hear the child’s name. Did you say it? 9. God gave us a wonderful Savior; we
praise Him (God) very much. 10. Did you see the moon last night (= in the night)? Yes, I saw
it; it was very large.

**LESSON 59. Object Pronouns with Vowel-stem Verbs**

**Vocabulary**

kwanika (tse) - to put out in sun  
kwanura (ye) - to bring in from sun  
kwubaha (kubaha) (shye) - to honor, reverence, respect kwwinga (nze) - to beseech, beg

ijwi - voice

119. a) In using these object pronouns with vowel-stem verbs it is very important to
remember the rules for vowel contractions.

1) u before another vowel changes to w. e.g. bamwanga (for ba-mu-anga) - they hate him,
batwigisha (for ba-tu-igisha) - they teach us, ndakwizera (for nda-ku-izera) - I trust you,
yarwibye (for ya-ru-ibye) - he stole it (key), ndabwemera (for nda-bu-emera) - I accept it
(grace)

The **wu** of 2nd class, loses the **u** before a vowel. yawibye (for ya-wu-ibye) - he stole it (salt)
2) a before another vowel drops out. ndabereka (for nda-ba-ereka) - I show them.
3) i in 3rd and 6th Class forms and in 2nd class plural drops out. arazica (ara-zi-ica) - he kills
them (chickens), yayibiagiwe (ya-yi-ibagiwe) - he forgot them (debts)
4) In class 4, ki changes to cy and bi to by before a vowel. ndacyibuka (nda-ki-ibuka) - I remember it (book), nabyibagiwe (na-bi-ibagiwe) - I forgot them (books)
5) ri of class 5 changes to __ry. yaryibye (ya-ri-ibye) - he stole it (franc)
6) The object pronoun for “me” n changes to ny before a vowel: anyerereka (a-n-ereka) - he shows me.

b) The future of vowel-stem verbs with a pronoun object: when a pronoun object is inserted it follows -za-, and makes whatever changes are necessary according to the above rules.

Thus: nzacyibuka - I will remember it, nzaberek - I will show them, nzakwereka - I will show you.

120. If an indirect object and a direct object come in the same verb, the direct precedes the indirect. e.g. Did you give Tom the book? I gave it to him: Wahaye Toma igitabo? Nakimuhaye.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Where are my two sheep? The dog is killing them. 2. I forgot to bring the book today, but I will remember it tomorrow. 3. The old man has done (worked) many sins, but he is confessing them. 4. The teacher wants medicine; the doctor will give it to him in the evening. 5. Where are the good peas? A thief stole them. 6. The people respected him (the teacher) because he taught them well. 7. Did you take the key to the mason? No, I forgot it. 8. Has John seen your garden? Yes, I showed it to him. 9. Did you put the wood out in the sun? I put it out yesterday morning. 10. Where are my new ropes? Thieves stole them.

LESSON 60. Review

I. Give the ordinary past of the following verbs, using a 3rd class singular subject. Then translate the forms you have written.

1. kwigisha 6. gukurikira 11. kuva 16. gutaha
2. kubona 7. kubaza 12. kwinginga 17. guha
3. kubanguka 8. gufata 13. guteka 18. kubeshya
5. kwinjira 10. kurira 15. kurushya 20. gupfa
II. Write in Kinyarwanda: (Do not translate the words in parentheses)

1. The cows drank.  
2. The boy washed them (clothes).  
3. Jesus saved me.  
4. I gave it (key) to her.  
5. She cooked them (corn).  
6. The animal ate them (peas).  
7. The sheep died.  
8. We saw it (bed).  
9. The young girls sang.  
10. The pupils learned them (words).  
11. The trees fell.  
12. We saw them (trees).  
13. We reverence Him (God).  
14. The goat slept.  
15. I gave it (cat) the meat.  
16. The bee stayed in the house.  
17. The child found it (franc).  
18. Thieves stole it (board) from him.  
19. They washed them (plates).  
20. Jiggers were in his feet.  
21. Did you wash them (feet)?  
22. Sinners repented (of) them (sins).  
23. They gave them (gardens) to us.  
24. The plants died.  
25. We heard it (voice).

III. Give the ordinary past of kugira showing agreement with all classes singular and plural.

IV. Using the first person singular as subject, give the ordinary past of guha, inserting the object pronoun for each class, singular and plural.

LESSON 61. Ordinal Numerals; -ombi

Vocabulary

icyayi (no pl.) - tea (4th cl.)  
ikawya (3rd cl.) - coffee, coffee trees  
nyuma (or, hanyuma) - afterward, later  
inanasi (3rd cl.) - pineapple  
ikirayi - white potato  
inunya (or, urunya) - tomato  
igikombe - cup

121. The ordinal numerals (i.e. first, second, etc.) are formed by the possessive particle followed by the ka- form of the numeral, for numbers from 2 to 7; for 8 to 10 use the invariable form of the numeral; “first” is the possessive particle followed by mbere. Note that the noun and possessive particle are in the singular, and that the possessive particle agrees with the noun.

umuntu wa mbere - the first person
urupapuro rwa kabiri - the second paper (or, page)
inzu ya gatatu - the 3rd house
ubwato bwa kane - the 4th boat
ishuri rya gatanu - the 5th school
umusozi wa gatandatu - the 6th hill
akantu ka karindwi - the 7th little thing
urubaho rwa munani - the 8th board
ukwezi kwacyenda - the 9th month
igiti cya cumi - the 10th tree
inanasi yacumi na rimwe - the 11th pineapple (note rimwe, not mbere)

For numbers from 12th upward, the last part of the number usually makes the plural accord. However, you will often hear it with the ka- form.

igitabo cya cumi na bitatu (or, gatatu) - the 13th book
urupapuro rwa makumyabiri n’eshanu (or, na gatanu) - the 25th page

122. The "last" of anything is nyuma or Imperuka preceded by the possessive particle. In a line of people the last one is: umuntu wa nyuma or, umuntu w’imperuka.

123. Numeral adverb. You have already learned that when counting with no object involved you say: rimwe, kabiri, etc. This same form is used for “once”, “twice”, etc. Also for “three times”, etc. e.g. Yasomye kabiri - he read twice.

Using this same prefix ka-, kenshi means “many times”, thus, “often”. Kangahe? means “how many times? e.g, Yaje hano kangahe? Yaje kenshi - How many times did he come here? He came often.

124 -ombi, both. When one wishes to say “my two eyes”, he must say: amaso yanjye yombi, that is, “both my eyes”. To use abiri here would imply that he had more than two eyes. This word may be used just as we use “both”, and must be used in referring to two of anything when that is all there is of it. Speaking of two people when only two are being considered, one would say bombi. “Both of you” is mwembi; “both of us” is twembi. For other class agreements use -ombi with the consonants of the possessive particles as prefixes.

Exercises:

Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The 4th sheep
2. The 16th boy
3. The last paper
4. The 3rd shepherd
5. The 57th song
6. My two ears
7. The 29th egg
8. The 18th letter
9. The first house
10. The 2nd river
11. Five times
12. The 24th man
13. The 43rd tree
14. The 10th string
15. The 5th pineapple
16. The 12th potato
17. The 4th cup of coffee
18. The 27th tomato
19. The last woman
20. How many times?
Lesson 62. Months, Days of Week, Telling Time.

Vocabulary

igice - part, half, chapter
ino - here
kurara (ye) - to spend the night, lodge
icyumweru 4th cl. - week
isaha (or isaa, saa) (3rd-5th) - hour, clock
iminota (iminuta) (2nd) - minute
itarike (3rd-5th) - date
umushyitsi - guest, visitor
gusiba (bye) - to be absent, omit,
kumara (ze) - to stay, spend (length of time), finish (tr.)
gusiba (bye) - to erase (short i)

125. Months. This is formed by the word for “month” with the ordinal numeral.

   Nukwezi kwa mbere - January
   ukwezi kwa cyenda (or, kw’icyenda) - September
   ukwezi kwa kabiri - February
   ukwezi kwa cumi (or, kw’icumi) - October
   ukwezi kwa karindwi - July
   ukwezi kwa cumi na kumwe (or, na rimwe) - November
   ukwezi k’umunani - August
   ukwezi kwa cumi n’abiri (or, na kabiri) - December

There are other Kinyarwanda names for the months, which you can find in a dictionary or on a calendar. You should try to learn them as well, as they are used a great deal. Dates are usually given like this:

   itariki ya makumyabiri na gatatu y’ukwezi kwa kane - April 23 or, ku itariki ya ... (on such and such a date).

   To ask: What date? one says: ku itariki ya kangahe?
   What month? mu kwezi kwa kangahe?
   What day? ku wa kangahe?

126. The days of the week are formed in the same way, using the agreement for “day”. Note that Sunday is different:

   ku cyumweru - Sunday
   ku wa mbere - Monday
   ku wa kabiri - Tuesday
   ku wa gatatu - Wednesday etc.

127. Telling Time. In Kinyarwanda they have names for the various times of the day; such as, “the time when the birds begin to sing,” “the time when the cows go to pasture,” etc. But for common use the Swahili word for “hour” (saa, or, isaa) is used. However, it is to be remembered that the day begins with daylight, rather than at midnight. Also, usually the Swahili numerals are used as well. A helpful clue to figuring the hour is that if by English time the number of the hour is 6 or less, add 6 to it; if the number is 7 or more, subtract 6 from it. Thus, 6:00 (English) (6 + 6 = 12) is: saa cumi n’ebiyiri. 4:00 (English) (4 + 6 = 10) saa kumi.

   7:00 - saa moya 1:00 - saa saba
In some areas they prefer the Kinyarwanda form to the Swahili, thus: 7:00 - isha imwe 8:00 - isaha ebyiri

Observe that in those cases the agreement of the numeral is 3rd cl. plural.

When the word isaha is used for “hours” (duration) or for “clocks”, the regular Kinyarwanda words are used, with 3rd class singular, 5th plural. 9:00 - saa tatu, three hours - amasaha atatu, three clocks - amasaha atatu

If you wish to indicate that the time is at night, you could say: saa ine za nijoro - 10:00 at night (or, saa ine ya nijoro).

For the fractions of hours, see the following:

9:10 - saa tatu n’iminota cumi, 9:10 - saa tatu n’igice
9:50 - saa ine ibuze iminota cumi (i.e. 10:00 lacking ten minutes).

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Did you come to church Sunday? I didn’t see you. 2. The pupils will return to school in October. 3. Four guests came Thursday and stayed five days. 4. On the 14th day of January we went to see the doctor, but he was not at home. 5. We wanted to go to Butare Wednesday, but rain fell the whole day. We will go tomorrow at 8:00. 6. On Sunday they start to sing at 9:30. 7. My friends are coming at 10:00 at night. 8. You (pl.) were absent a whole week in March. How many days did you spend at Kigali? 9. It is 2:15. Go to school quickly. 10. The masons worked six hours on Friday.
128. These are only a few of the terms one needs. You can easily learn many others from the Africans. Necessarily, many of these terms come from Swahili, or English, or French, because many of these things did not exist in the country until Europeans brought them.

For “to set the table” one says: Tegura ameza - prepare the table. For “to clear the table”: Kura ibintu ku meza - take the things from the table.

Note: kubira and kubiza: One would say: Biza amazi - boil the water, but Amazi arabira - the water is boiling,

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Cook the sweet potatoes on the stove. 2. I boiled much clean water, but now it is dirty. 3. I want sugar and milk in my coffee. 4. He poured out the good milk but he put away the bad milk. 5. There is only a little (few) fire; put more wood in the fire; blow it (fire). 6. Did you (s.) put salt and pepper in the meat? I want to fry it. 7. Put a tablespoons of sugar in the tea; then (maze) we will pour it into the cups. 8. The wheat was in a bucket (pail), but the girls are putting it out in the sun. 9. We have finished eating (= to eat); clear the table. I will put away the food. 10. I want to grind the wheat. Where did you put it?
LESSON 64. Stative Voice

Vocabulary
kunezerwa (nezerewe) - to be happy
kurwara (ye) - to be sick, ill
gukomera (ye) - to be strong
kumera (ze) neza - to be well
gusonza (shonje) - to be hungry
gukonja (nje) - to be cold, wet, damp

129. Stative Voice. In Kinyarwanda, words that express a condition or state of being, or bodily or mental attitude, are used in the stative voice which means that the prefix is in the -ra- present, but the suffix is past. This applies to present time. For past and future time these verbs are formed like any others (or by compound tenses which are not taught in this book). In the negative and in dependent clauses the -ra- drops out; it also drops out when an object or phrase (other than the infinitive) follows the verb in the same clause. e.g. arwaye malaria - he’s ill with malaria.

   ndarwaye - I am ill  ndanezerewe - I am happy
   ndicaye - I am sitting down  ndizey e - I trust, am trusting

For habitual present of these verbs the regular prefixless present is used. e.g. Arwara iminsi vose - he is ill every day (or, always)

Note: When a part of the body is the object of a verb, but the owner of the part is not the same person as the subject of the verb, use the proper object pronoun in the verb instead of the possessive adjective. e.g. Yamfashe ukuboko - he seized my arm.

Exercises:
I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:
1. The children want a lot of food. They are very hungry. 2. Two girls were absent today because they are sick. 3. I trust Jesus because He saved me. 4. I heard that you were sick. Are you well now? Yes, I am very well and I have peace in my heart. 5. The teachers are willing to work hard to help their people to be saved. 6. The shepherd’s dog is dying; the doctor can’t treat it. 7. The clothes are wet; I’ll put them out in the sun. Remember to bring them in (this) evening. 8. My rope is very strong. I bought it yesterday. 9. Mary’s baby (infant) is always sick. The doctor is treating it. 10. We are very happy to see you (pl.). We haven’t seen you (for) years.
LESSON 65. -o with the infinitive

Vocabulary

urukero - saw
umusumari - nail, straight pin
itegura (5th) - tile for roof
gusakara (ye) - to roof, put on roof
umucanga - sand, gravel
kubumba (mbye) - to mold (bricks, pottery)
gusatura (ye) - to cut lengthwise
kubaza (jye) - to plane (boards), do wood carving
incafbiti, ishoka, indyankwi - axe
itafari (or, idafari) - brick (5th)
gusenya (nye) - to tear down
umusenyi - sand
gukeba (bye) - to cut meat, cloth paper
guca (ciye) - to cut (tree, string cut in chunks
imbaraga zo gutsinda Satani - strength to defeat Satan
amategura yo gusakara - tiles to make a roof, or, for roofing

130. Note the construction in the following phrases:

umucanga wo kwubaka - sand for building
imbaraga zo gutsinda Satani - strength to defeat Satan
amategura yo gusakara - tiles to make a roof, or, for roofing

In all of these examples you notice that the verb is explaining the work or use of the thing named. But in Kinyarwanda the simple infinitive is not sufficient as in English for this construction. You must use this little particle which is the possessive particle with a changed to o. Remember that whenever you wish to use a noun followed by an infinitive explaining the use of the object you must use this particle in agreement with the noun. This may also be translated: “for using” as “for building” (above) instead of “to build.” Note these examples:

Ndashaka umuntu wo kujya i Kigmi - I want a man to go to Kigali (purpose).
Yasabye umugabo kugenda - he asked the man to go (no particle needed).

Exercises:

1. Translate into Sngl ish:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I want four hoes to cultivate (with) in the bananas. 2. Bring all the tools for cutting trees. 3. Look for a man to put a roof on the house. 4. The workers have many nails to put in the boards. 5. We want two other workers to plane boards; one is sick. 6. Where is your axe for splitting wood? 7. Find (look for) a pencil for writing the names of the pupils. 8. Bring a cloth to put on the table. 9. We have thirteen pieces of paper (= 13 papers) to sell. 10. The children don’t have books to read.
LESSON 66. Imperatives with the Subjunctive

Vocabulary

gutegereza (je) - to wait, wait for  guhamagar~ (ye) - to call
kubwira (ye) - to tell  gusa - only (this is the adverb derived from adj. -sa.)

131. In Lesson 22 you learned the simple singular imperative. For the plural imperative the personal prefix *mu-* is used, and the final *a* of the stem is changed to *e*. e.g. mugende - go (pl.), mukore - work.

132. You will remember that, as given in par. 37, the singular imperative is just the stem of the verb. However, whenever an object pronoun occurs in the verb (imperative), except that of the first person singular, the final *a* of the verb must change to *e*. e.g. Mpa igitabo - give me the book; Muhe igitabo - give him the book; Duhe igitabo - give us the book; Yabumbe - mold them (bricks); Bizane - bring them (books).

133. **Subjunctive.** All these imperative forms which end in *e* are in reality in the subjunctive mood, about which you will learn more in the next lesson.

The singular imperative may also be used in the subjunctive: ukore neza - work well, uzane imbaho - bring the boards, wandike amazina - write the names.

Usually the simple form (not subjunctive) means “do it right now”, but the imperative using the subjunctive may mean “do it any time today”. Genda - go (now), Ugende - go (any time today)

However, the subjunctive form must be used for the second of two commands e.g. Zana ibijumba ubiteke - Bring the sweet potatoes and cook them. Genda ushake isuka - Go and look for a hoe.

Observe that no word is used for “and” for joining the two commands.

**Note:** If the first imperative verb is affirmative, the second will be subjunctive, but if the first is negative the second will often be the infinitive. e.g. Subira ubikore - do it again; Ntusubire kubikora - don’t do it again. Bwira Yohana aze - tell John to come; Ntubwire Yohana kuza - don’t tell John to come.

**Note 2:** Often the imperative is prefixed by *ni-*, especially in the plural. This does not particularly change the meaning. Nimugende - go (pl.) Nuze - come (s.)

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Where is your pencil? Bring it to school. 2. Bring all the books; put them away in the large box. 3. Come back here (pl.). Help the boys hoe in the garden. 4. Go, wash your hands well (pl.); now set the table. 5. You have the names of all the pupils; write them in the book. 6. I can’t find (= see) my goats; look for them and bring them here. 7. We have only a few bricks; mold (pl.) some more today. 8. Learn well now (pl.) because later you will want to know much wisdom. 9. First (= begin by) (pl.) wash the dishes; afterward work outside. 10. The hammer and nails and saw are here: take them to the skilled workman.

LESSON 67. Subjunctive

Vocabulary

itara (5th) - lamp  itabaza (5th) - lantern, small lamp
igikoni - kitchen  ururabyo - flower
umutego - trap  rwagakoco (3rd) - small trap
icyumba (4th) - room (in house)  kwitonda (nze) - to be careful

134. a) As in other languages the subjunctive is used in expressions such as “let us”, “let him”, etc. (not “let” in the sense of “permit”, but as we say “let’s go”, etc.) In the 3rd person it has the idea of “have him do”, or “he may do”.

tugende - let’s go akore - let him work, have him work, he may work
batangire kuririmba - have them begin to sing
Bakore iki ubu? Bahinge mu murima wanjye. - What shall they do now? Have them hoe in my garden.

Any of these forms, except the question, may be preceded by ni- without changing the meaning. e.g. nitugende, naze.

b) The negative imperative is:

ntugende - don’t go  ntitugende - let’s not go
ntagende - have him not go  ntimugende - don’t go
ntibagende - have them not go

135. Subjunctive with kugira ngo. In Lesson 50 you learned that kugira ngo may mean “in order that” or “so that”. When so used in the affirmative it must be followed by the subjunctive: e.g. Araza kugira ngo yige - he is coming so that he may learn.

Sometimes kugira ngo is shortened to ngo. When kugira ngo means “to think” or “suppose” it does not take the subjunctive.

When kugira ngo means “so that” and the word following is in the negative, the subjunctive is not usually used, but rather the dependent negative form as taught in par. 186. e.g. Yirutse kugira ngo adafatwa - He ran so he wouldn’t be caught.
Yasabye umuti kugira ngo atarwara - he asked for medicine so he wouldn’t get sick.
Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Let the visitor spend the night here; it is getting dark; he cannot go home now. 2. Let us learn well because we want to get much wisdom. 3. Wash all the dishes and put them away. 4. The pupils are outside; call them; have them come in now. 5. I want a light; look for it and bring it here. 6. Go home (pl.) and find (look for) your francs and bring them. 7. What shall Mary do now? Have her boil water to drink. 8. Don’t take the flowers into the kitchen. Take them into the other room. 9. Let’s not refuse to help our friends, because they have lots of work. 10. Don’t (pl.) bathe in the river because the water is dirty. 11. Don’t put the potatoes out in the sun again. Put them away in the house. 12. Don’t have the workmen tear down the house; it is strong.

LESSON 68. How to say “Stop” and “Wait”

Vocabulary

- gutwara (ye) - to carry, take (away)
- kureka (tse) - to stop (int.)
- kurekera aho - to stop (int.)
- kubuza (jiije) - to hinder, prevent, stop (tr.)
- guhaguruka (tse) - to stand up
- guhagarara (hagaze) - to stand, stop (int.), wait
- guhagarika (tse) - to stop (tr.) (something moving as car, person)

136. a) Observe these uses of “stop”.

1) (Someone is going away) Stop, I want to tell you something - Hagarara (or, Buretse) ndashaka kukubwira ijambo. (B’uretse is just “Stop.”)
2) Stop writing on the slate - Reka (or, rekerja aho) kwandika ku rubaho.
3) The child is going into the water, stop him - Umwana agiye mu mazi. Mubuze! Stop the child from going into the water - Buza umwana kujya mu mazi (or, ngo ntajye mu mazi).
4) Stop the car, I want to get out - Hagariika imodoka, ndashaka kuyivamo.

In (1) the word “stop” is by itself, and means only to cease going away with the idea of “wait” or “wait a minute”.

In (2) “stop” means to stop any kind of action that is already begun.

In (3) the idea is to “stop” or hinder, prevent, someone else from what he is doing.
In (4) the idea is to “stop” someone or something from going.

Note regarding -reka: If the subject of -reka is the same as the one who is doing the action, it means “stop”. (In this case it may also be -rekerero aho). e.g. Reka kwandika (or Rekera aho kwandika) - Stop writing (The one who is to stop is the one who is writing.)

If the subject of -reka is not the same as the one who is doing the action, it means “allow” -(e.g. Umureke agende - allow him to go.)

b) -tegereza and -hagarara, meaning “wait”.

   Wait for me -ntegereza (or, untegereze).
   Wait, I want to give you something - Hagarara, ndashaka kuguha ikintu. If you state whom one waits for, use -tegereza.

c) Guharuruka and guhagarara, meaning “to stand”:

The act of coming to a standing position is: guhaguruka. Referring to the duration of standing, use: guhagarara. Let’s stand and sing - Duhaguruoke turirimbe. We stood for two hours - Twahagaze amasaha abiri.

137. Object pronoun: -ha-. In par. 66 you learned the use of birahari. This particle is often inserted in forms of the verb “to be”, and sometimes in other verbs as well, to mean “there” or “here”. You hear it most often if someone comes to the door and asks: Mbese muganga arahari? The reply: Yee, arahari. - Is the doctor here? Yes, he’s here.

In the past, when -ha- is inserted in a form of -ri, the verb is repeated. Observe: Wari uhari ejo? Yee, nari mpari - Were you here yesterday? Yes, I was here.

Note this other use: Washyize umusumeno hasi? Narawuhashyize. - Did you put the saw on the floor? I put it there.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Stop. (s.) Don’t go home now. There is work to do. 2. Wait (pl.) for the girls; they are coming. 3. Light a lamp so that we may see to read. 4. Stop the children from going (to go) to the river. 5. Stop the doctor. I want to show him my child. 6. Were you in school yesterday? Yes, we were here. 7. Were your parents in church yesterday? Yes, they were there. 8. Put the trap on the floor in the house. I put it there this morning (in the morning). 9. Let us not wait for the others but let’s hurry. 10. Don’t leave stones in the path; we want to walk there.
LESSON 69. Possessive Particle with a changed to o

Vocabulary

ishami - branch  
gutema (mye) - to cut (grass, plants, trees)  
ishyamba (5th) - forest, brushy place  
ubwatsi - grass (tall, for building)  
ibyatsi bibi - weeds

igitaka (or, ubutaka) - soil, earth  
kwitema (mye) - to cut oneself (as finger, nitemye urutoke)  
ibyatsi - grass (any kind)

138. The possessive particle, wa, ba, etc., and the word na change their a to o before infinitives and before mu and ku.

e.g. kurya no kunywa - to eat and drink  
ku meza no ku ntebe - on the table and on the chair  
mu ishuri no mu rusengero - in the school and in the church  
igitabo cyo gusoma - a book to read

139. The possessive particle, as wa, ba, ya, etc. sometimes becomes wo, bo, yo, etc. as seen in par. 130. The idea of the particle wa, etc. is possession. But there are some instances in English where we use the possessive “of” when really the thought of place is intended; e.g. we say “the trees of the forest” when we mean “in the forest”. In those instances the forms wo, yo, etc. are used, followed by mu or ku:

e.g. ibiti byo mu ishyamba - the trees of the forest  
umusatsi wo ku mutwe - the hair of the head  
ibibabi byo ku mashami - the leaves of the branches

140. On the other hand, when in English we would use only “in” or “on” to connect two nouns, in Kinyarwanda the form wo, yo, etc. must be used as well as mu or ku, when a prepositional phrase modifies a noun. e.g. The trees on the hill - ibiti byo ku musozi, the pages in the book - impapuro zo mu gitabo.

In this use one could also say, “ibibabi byo ku giti” when the emphasis is on location. Note the difference here:

Put the book on the table - shyira igitabo ku meza (ku meza modifies shyira)  
The book on the table is good - igitabo cyo ku meza ni cyiza (ku meza modifies igitabo).

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The soil in the garden is not good. 2. The leaves on the trees are beginning to fall. 3. We want to sing and to pray in the church. 4. The bricks of the house are not strong. 5. Cut (pl.) all the grass in the garden. I don’t want it. 6. The flowers on the hills are beautiful; let’s go get (look for) some (them). 7. The weeds in the garden will kill the plants. 8. The hair on the sheep’s skin is long. 9. The pages of the book are very dirty; let’s be careful in reading them. 10. The words in God’s book are wonderful; let’s read them every day.

LESSON 70. Review

I. Questions:

1. How do the ordinal numerals differ from the cardinals in Kinyarwanda?
2. What kind of verbs are in the stative voice?
3. How is the stative formed? Give an example.
4. When does na become no (2 instances)?
5. When does the possessive particle wa, etc. change to wo, etc. (3 instances)
6. How is the plural imperative formed? Give an example.
7. How is the subjunctive formed? Give an example.
8. How is the negative imperative formed? Give an example.
9. How are the names of the months formed?
10. How are the days of the week formed?
11. Distinguish (by giving examples other than those used in the lesson) between: a) the 4 words used for “to stop”; b) the 2 words used for “to wait”; c) the 2 ways of saying “to stand”.

II.

1. Write in Kinyarwanda the names of all the months.
2. Write in Kinyarwanda the names of the days ‘of the week.

III. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Don’t go (pl.) to the valley to cut grass for putting on a roof.
2. Bring (s.) green beans and tomatoes, and cook them.
3. I will punish you (s.) because you were absent four days.
4. I told you to put the new books on the table. Where are they? I put them there.
5. The fundis want tools to plane boards.
6. The grass in the garden is very tall, cut it.
7. The last page in your book is very dirty.
8. Go, both of you, to work in your gardens.
9. The children are very cold; they have no clothes; give them (clothes) to them.
10. We are very happy because Jesus saved us and gave us new hearts; we praise Him.
11. How many times did you (s) bring beans to sell? I brought them three times.
12. The men often go to Butare to look for work.
13. The old man is sick (in) both his legs.
14. The guests will go home Friday afternoon.
15. The children came at 7:00 this morning. Give them their francs now.
16. On Sunday we like to sing and worship.
17. The thief came in the night so that he might find an opportunity to steal.
18. The cows are going into the garden; stop them from eating (to eat) the corn.
19. Two boys were bad (did badly) in school; the teacher punished them; they stood for two hours.
20. Cut all the weeds in the garden.

LESSON 71. Far Past Tense

Vocabulary

umugani - parable, proverb
urugendo- journey guca (ciye)
gutinda (nze) - to be late
ingeso - custom, habit
umugani - to tell a proverb, parable
gutegura (ye) - to prepare
You learned that the ordinary past tense is used in speaking of that which has been done today. For more distant time, yesterday or before, use the far past tense, of which the tense sign is -ara-. Thus, there is: personal prefix, tense sign -ara-, past stem: tw-ara-koze: we worked. ya-ara-giye - he went away.

1) Note the conjugation when nothing follows the verb within the clause except cyane or ati:

narakoze - I worked  
twarakaze - we worked  
warakoze - you worked  
mwarakoze - you worked  
(yarakoze - he, she worked  
barakoze - they worked)

In the singular, the first a of -ara- is short, in the plural it is long. Both are high tones. Remember that for past time today the tones are low. Vowel-stem verbs follow the regular rule: naribagiwe - I forgot; waribagiwe - you forgot; yaribagiwe - he forgot, etc.

2) If something follows the verb, within the clause, the -ra is dropped (but -a- retained), giving the appearance of the ordinary past, but the tone is high instead of low.

nakoze twakoze  
wakoze mwakoze  
yako ze bako ze

Note the short a in the singular, but long in the plural.

3) In dependent clauses and in the negative, though the time is far distant, the -ra- is omitted. However, the tone distinctions remain the same.

Note: You will hear and see exceptions to rule 2) and 3).

**Exercises:**

**I. Translate into English:**


**II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:**

1. The people heard the Gospel; they thought about it much (add -ho to end of verb). 2. The boys prepared much food because they went on a long journey. 3. The workmen carried large...
boxes on their heads. 4. I waited a whole day to see the European. 5. The old man told many proverbs to teach the young men. 6. Didn’t you go to help build the church? Yes, we went. 7. The girls prepared their clothes nicely because they wanted to go to school. 8. Did you (pl.) hear that thieves stole the rich man’s cows? What did you think about it? (add -ho to end of verb). 9. We were late to arrive there, but we wanted to enter in order to see the leaders (important men). 10. The pastor (umupasitori) spoke very good words; afterward many sinners were saved.

LESSON 72. Negative of Far Fast

Vocabulary

impamba - food for a journey  
kwiruka (tse) - to run, run away
kera - long ago, long time in future  
kuremba (mbye) - to be very ill (almost dying)
gutabara (ye) - to help, go to assistance of  
gushira (ze) - to finish (int.), be all gone, end (int.)

Note: gushira is common in expressions like: mu cyumweru gishize - last week; mu kwezi gushize - last month; ifu irashize - the flour is all gone. “Next week” is: mu cyumweru gitaha.

142. For the negative of the far past, -ra- is dropped, making it resemble the ordinary past but the tone remains high: sinagiye, ntiwagiye, etc.

143. Sentence order. You learned that when both an indirect object pronoun and a direct one come in the same verb, the direct precedes the indirect. However, when both a direct and an indirect object follow the verb, the indirect is usually first, unless it is a long phrase; in which case, if the direct object is but one word, it will come first. e.g. Nahaye Petero igitabo - I gave Peter a book. Nahaye igitabo umwana wa Petero - I gave Peter’s child a book.

144. Ejobundi. This means “day before yesterday” or “day after tomorrow”. e.g. Yagiye ejobundi - he went day before yesterday. Azagenda ejobundi - he will go day after tomorrow.

145. The stative of gupfa is often used when a person is not actually dead, but is very ill (sometimes when he is not even very ill). e.g. Arapfuye (lit.) he is dying (but actually “he is very ill”). Sometimes they use ararembye in the same way - “he is about to die”. However, when they say, “Yarapfuye” or “Yapfuye”, they usually mean that he is actually dead. Gupfa is sometimes used of things that no longer function. e.g. Umupira wapfuye - the tin is flat. Imashini yarapfuye - the machine broke down.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The boys ran to school; they didn’t want to be late. 2. My food for the journey was all gone and I was hungry. 3. Long ago the people helped us to build the church. 4. Did you (pl.) give the children clothes? Yes, we gave them to them. 5. The woman is very sick (dying); have them take her to a doctor. 6. The day after tomorrow we will go to help (to the assistance of) the poor man. 7. Last month the “fundis” didn’t finish building our new house, but they worked very hard. 8. You have come very late (= you were late to come). Yes, the journey was very difficult for us. 9. The young lady lied to me, but I have forgiven her. 10. On our journey we saw many wild animals, and they didn’t run away.

LESSON 73. Father and Mother

Vocabulary

data - my, our father  
so - your (s. and pl.) father

se - his, her, their father  
mama - my, our mother

nyoko - your (s. & pl.) mother  
nyina - his, her, their, mother

kworoherwa (hewe) - to get better

146. You will note that there are three words for “father” and three for “mother”, depending on whose father or mother it is. The possessives are not often used with these words. Data in itself means “my father” (or, “our father”); nyoko alone means “your mother”, etc. Do not say data wanjye or mama wanjye. Data wacu is my, our paternal uncle, and mama wacu is my, our maternal aunt.

In the Lord’s prayer we say “Data wa twese”- Father of Us all, because to say Data wacu would be “my uncle” not “our father”.

147. These words have first class agreements, even though they do not have the regular noun prefixes. To make any of these forms plural the prefix ba is used, but not attached, but still no possessive is used. e.g. Ba so - your fathers; ba nyina - their mothers.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Where is your father? He died long ago. 2. John’s mother came here day before yesterday, but I didn’t see her. 3. We saw your mother in church yesterday. 4. My father is waiting for us; let’s hurry. 5. Call Peter’s father; I want to give him work. 6. Our fathers work hard in order to give (that they may give) us food and clothing. 7. I want to go tell my mother that the doctor is here. 8. My father in heaven (ijuru) loves us all and wants to save us. 9. The children’s mother is cooking their food. 10. Tell your father that the workmen have finished molding (to mold) the bricks.

LESSON 74. Brother and Sister

(Vocabulary is included in the grammar.)

148. In Kinyarwanda it is a bit complicated to say “brother” and “sister” for it depends on the age and sex of the parties involved.

1) A boy’s sister is mushiki (no initial vowel). It must be followed by the possessive: mushiki wanjye - my sister; mushiki wawe - your sister; mushiki we - his sister; mushiki wacu - our sister; mushiki wa Yohana - John’s sister. In the plural: bashiki banjye - my sisters, etc.

2) A girl’s brother is musaza, which follows the same rules as mushiki. Musaza wanjye - my brother; basaza babo - their brothers, etc.

3) A boy’s older brother is mukuru: mukuru wanjye, mukuru we, bakuru banjye, bakuru babo, etc.

4) A girl’s older sister is also mukuru, and is used exactly the same as for a boy’s older brother.

5) A boy’s younger brother is murumuna: murumuna wanjye - my younger brother; bamurumuna banjye - my younger brothers, etc.

6) A girl’s younger sister is also murumuna, and used in the same way as for younger brother.

7) Exactly the same terms are used for the children of one’s paternal uncle or maternal aunt, so one is never quite sure if two people are actually brothers and sisters, or only cousins. If necessary to distinguish them from true siblings, one says: e.g. mushiki wanjye kwa data wacu - my female cousin (daughter of my paternal uncle).

149. If when seeing a boy and girl together, or two boys or two girls, you wish to ask, “Are you brother and sister?”, you would say, “Muva inda imwe?” (lit. did you come from the same stomach?)” Likewise I “we are brother and sister” is: Tuva inda imwe. Abavandimwe is siblings.

Exercises:

Translate into Kinyarwanda:
LESSON 75. Immediate Past

Vocabulary

inkuru - news
kubakara (ye) - sad, to suffer, be sorry
kubabara (ye) (or, amakuru) - to be angry
kuryama (mye) - to lie down, go to bed
kwitaba (bye) - to answer when called
gucucuma (mye) - to mash
gukora (ze) umugati - to make, knead bread

150. The immediate past tense is formed by the personal prefix + -ra- + the past stem, thus: a-ra-giye - he has gone (just now). The conjugation:

ndagiye - I have gone
turagiye - we have gone
uragiye - you have gone
muragiye - you have gone
aragiye - he, she has gone
baragiye - they have gone

Note: In appearance this is just like the stative, but this tense is normally used for action verbs, while the stative is for a state of being,

151. The use of this tense is to express that which has happened just now, or is about to happen in a moment. e.g. Aragiye - he has just now gone. Often it is used when he is just now doing it. You call a person and he answers, “Ndaje”, though he hasn’t started to move yet. He means, “I’m just coming”, though he says “I have come.”

152. In the negative of this tense and in dependent clauses the -ra- drops out. Usually if there is an object or phrase after the verb, the -ra- is dropped. e.g. Mbonye umwana - I’ve just seen the child.

Exercises: (Can you recognize in these exercises which verbs are stative and which are immediate past?)
I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I have just gone to bed because I am sick. 2. John’s father has heard bad news and he has gone (just now). 3. Did you call the names just now? Yes, all have answered. 4. The men went just now to begin their work. 5. The woman has a bad ulcer on her leg; she is suffering a lot (much). 6. It’s getting late, I can’t see well. Yes, I just lit a lamp. 7. What are the workmen doing? They’ve just gone home. 8. When will you make bread? I’ve just finished making it. 9. My mother is preparing tea; the water has just boiled. 10. This morning I saw that the floor was very dirty in your room. I know, but I just swept it.

LESSON 76. Possessive Adjectives

Vocabulary

umubiri - body umuzi - root (usually plural)
urukwavu - rabbit igicucu - fool, foolish person, shade, shadow
ingwe - leopard

153. See the tables at the end of the lesson.

In par. 6 you learned that the possessive adjective is made up of two parts: the first part agrees with the thing possessed and the last part with the possessor. However, all the possessive adjectives you have learned thus far have been when the possessor was a person. But other things may possess, e.g. referring to a cow, one might say “its tail” - umurizo wayo. Here, wa agrees with umurizo (thing possessed), and yo agrees with inka (possessor). It is especially important to remember this when speaking of God. The word Imana is third class. Thus, His word would not be ijambo rye, but ijambo ryayo.

154. The vowel in the first part of the word is always a, and in the second part always o, except when the possessor is a person (which forms you have already learned).

155. An easy rule to help you remember these forms is that the first part, agreeing with the object owned, is the possessive particle, and the second part, agreeing with the possessor, is the possessive particle with a changed to o. Do not be frightened by the number of forms given in the accompanying table. If you follow this rule given here it will not be difficult.

For this lesson, study especially the first four columns of the table on the following page (that is, the first four classes) before doing the following exercises.

Exercises:
I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. We have many chickens; their legs are short. 2. My older brother (of boy) has a very good cow; its horns are long. 3. God is able to defeat Satan; His strength is very great. (“strength” should be plural, and for “great” use “much”.) 4. The foolish man has very few clothes, and his hair is long. 5. The fire is big (much); its light helps us to see to read. 6. Your rabbit is very nice; its body is big. 7. Did you (pl.) see our big dog? Its tail is short, but its eyes are very big. 8. The young men have their spears because they are going to the forest. 9. John’s father built a new house; its rooms are large and it is very strong. 10. There is a lot of corn in our garden; its roots are very short.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Class</th>
<th>2nd Class</th>
<th>3rd Class</th>
<th>4th Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we - wabo</td>
<td>wawo - wayo</td>
<td>wayo - wazo</td>
<td>wacyo - wabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be - babo</td>
<td>bawo - bayo</td>
<td>bayo - bazo</td>
<td>bacyo - babyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ye - yabo</td>
<td>yawo - yayo</td>
<td>yayo - yazo</td>
<td>yacyo - yabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze - zabo</td>
<td>zawo - zayo</td>
<td>zayo - zazo</td>
<td>zacyo - zabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>eye - cyabo</td>
<td>cyawo - cyayo</td>
<td>cyayo - cyazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bye - byabo</td>
<td>byawo - byayo</td>
<td>byayo - byazo</td>
<td>byacyo - byabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>rye - ryabo</td>
<td>ryawo - ryayo</td>
<td>ryayo - ryazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ye - yabo</td>
<td>yawo - yayo</td>
<td>yayo - yazo</td>
<td>yacyo - yabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>rwe - rwabo</td>
<td>rwawo - rwayo</td>
<td>rwayo - rwazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze - zabo</td>
<td>zawo - zayo</td>
<td>zayo - zazo</td>
<td>zacyo - zabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>ke - kabo</td>
<td>kawo - kayo</td>
<td>kayo - kazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twe - twabo</td>
<td>twawo - twayo</td>
<td>twayo - twazo</td>
<td>twacyo - twabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>bwe - bwabo</td>
<td>bwawo - bwayo</td>
<td>bwayo - bwazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ye - yabo</td>
<td>yawo - yayo</td>
<td>yayo - yazo</td>
<td>yacyo - yabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>kwe - kwabo</td>
<td>kwawo - kwayo</td>
<td>kwayo - kwazo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ye - yabo</td>
<td>yawo - yayo</td>
<td>yayo - yazo</td>
<td>yacyo - yabyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th</td>
<td>he - habo</td>
<td>hawo - hayo</td>
<td>hayo - hazo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Explanation for use of above table:** You will note that there are four forms for each class: for example, in 1st class there are: we, wabo, be, babo. This is because: 1) the thing may be singular and the possessor singular: umwana we; 2) the thing may be singular and the possessor plural: umwana wabo; 3) the thing
may be plural and the possessor singular: abana be; 4) the thing may be plural and the possessor plural: abana babo.

Let us take a word of another class, for example, to help you to understand the use of these forms. Suppose we wish to talk about the “roots of trees.” Root - umuzi is second class, while tree - igiti is fourth. Remember the first part of the word agrees with the thing possessed and the last part with the possessor. When we say “its root”, the tree is the possessor and the root the thing possessed. Now note: 1) umuzi wacyo - its root (1 tree and 1 root); 2) umuzi wabyo - their root (trees plural but 1 root); 3) imizi yacyo - its roots (1 tree, but roots plural); 4) imizi yabyo - their roots (trees and roots both plural).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5th Class</th>
<th>6th Class</th>
<th>7th Class</th>
<th>8th Class</th>
<th>9th Class</th>
<th>10th Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waryo - wayo</td>
<td>warwo - wazo</td>
<td>wako - watwo</td>
<td>wabwo - wayo</td>
<td>wakwo - wayo</td>
<td>waho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baryo - bayo</td>
<td>barwa - bazo</td>
<td>bako - batwo</td>
<td>babwo - bayo</td>
<td>bakwo - bayo</td>
<td>baho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waryo - wayo</td>
<td>warwo - wazo</td>
<td>wako - watwo</td>
<td>wabwo - wayo</td>
<td>wakwo - wayo</td>
<td>wahe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaryo - yayo</td>
<td>yarwo - yazo</td>
<td>yako - yatwo</td>
<td>yabwo - yayo</td>
<td>yakwo - yayo</td>
<td>yaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaryo - yayo</td>
<td>yarwo - yazo</td>
<td>yako - yatwo</td>
<td>yabwo - yayo</td>
<td>yakwo - yayo</td>
<td>yaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaryo - zayo</td>
<td>zarwo - zazo</td>
<td>zako - zatwo</td>
<td>zabwo - zayo</td>
<td>zakwo - zayo</td>
<td>zaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyaryo - cyayo</td>
<td>cyarwo - cyazo</td>
<td>zyako - cyatwo</td>
<td>cyabwo - cyayo</td>
<td>cyakwo - cyayo</td>
<td>cyaho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byaryo - byayp</td>
<td>byarwo - byazo</td>
<td>byako - byatwo</td>
<td>byabwo - byayo</td>
<td>byakwo - byayo</td>
<td>byah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ryaryo - ryayo</td>
<td>ryarwo - ryazo</td>
<td>ryako - yatwo</td>
<td>ryabwo - ryayo</td>
<td>ryakwo - ryayo</td>
<td>ryah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaryo - yayo</td>
<td>yarwo - yazo</td>
<td>yako - yatwo</td>
<td>yabwo - yayo</td>
<td>yakwo - yayo</td>
<td>yah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rwaryo - rwayo</td>
<td>rwarwo - rwazo</td>
<td>rwako - rwatwo</td>
<td>rwabwo - rwayo</td>
<td>rwakwo - rwayo</td>
<td>rwah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaryo - zayo</td>
<td>zarwo - zazo</td>
<td>zako - katwo</td>
<td>zabwo - zayo</td>
<td>zakwo - zayo</td>
<td>zah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karyo - kayo</td>
<td>karwo - kazo</td>
<td>kako - katwo</td>
<td>kabwo - kayo</td>
<td>kakwo - kayo</td>
<td>kah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twaryo - twayo</td>
<td>kwarwo - twazo</td>
<td>kwako - twatwo</td>
<td>kwabwo - twayo</td>
<td>kwakwo - twayo</td>
<td>twah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bwaryo - bwayo</td>
<td>kwarwo - bwazo</td>
<td>kwako - bwatwo</td>
<td>bwabwo - bwayo</td>
<td>bwakwo - bwayo</td>
<td>bwah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaryo - yayo</td>
<td>yarwo - yazo</td>
<td>hako - yatwo</td>
<td>yabwo - yayo</td>
<td>yakwo - yayo</td>
<td>yah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwaryo - kwayo</td>
<td>kwarwo - kwazo</td>
<td>kwako - kwatwo</td>
<td>kwabwo - kwayo</td>
<td>kwakwo - kwayo</td>
<td>kwah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaryo - yayo</td>
<td>yarwo - yazo</td>
<td>yako - yatwo</td>
<td>yabwo - yayo</td>
<td>yakwo - yayo</td>
<td>yah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haryo - hayo</td>
<td>harwo - hazo</td>
<td>hako - hatwo</td>
<td>habwo - hayo</td>
<td>hakwo - hayo</td>
<td>hah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LESSON 77. Possessive Adjectives (continued)**

**Vocabulary**

- imbaragasa - flea
- igipfamatwi - deaf person
- umupanga - machete, grass knife
- idirishya (5th) - window
- ivi - knee (pl. amavi)
- munsi - under (followed by ya if object follows)

For grammar, study the remainder of the chart of possessive adjectives.
**Exercises:** Translate into Kinyarwanda: Follow this pattern:

The boy; his hat: umuhungu; ingofero ye.

1. The rabbit; its hair
2. The dogs; their fleas
3. The cat; its ears
4. The blind man; his eyes
5. God; His grace
6. God; His works
7. The deaf person; his faith
8. The cats; their tails
9. The man; his knees
10. The books; their pages
11. The chickens; their heads
12. The school; its books
13. The house; its windows
14. The countries; their languages
15. Animal; its teeth
16. The sheep; its tail
17. The lantern; its light
18. The trees; their fruit
19. The young girl; her teeth

**LESSON 78. Causative Verbs**

**Vocabulary**

kuboha (shye) - to tie, bind, knit, weave
gusasa (shashe) - to make a bed, spread grass
isabune - soap (3rd sing. 5th pl.)
gutanga (nze) - to pay (francs), to give, offer (as offering)
gutinya (nye) - to fear
kubohora (ye) - to untie

**Note:** gutanga is not used if the recipient is named.

156. To give the meaning of “to cause to” to a verb, the suffix -isha or -esha is added to a verb. For example: gukora - to work, gukoresha - to cause to work.

157. To determine whether to use -esha or -isha, it is necessary to know the A I U rule: If the next to the last syllable in a verb stem contains a, i, or u, the added suffix will contain i (-isha) but if the next to the last syllable has e or o, the added suffix will contain e (-esha).

Thus: gukora becomes gukoresha - to cause to work, use. kuririmba becomes kuririmbisha - to cause to sing, lead in singing.

This form is not always translated in English by “to cause to”. It may have the idea of “to use” or “to do with.” e.g. gukoresha isuka - to use a hoe, work with a hoe (lit. cause a hoe to work) kubohesha umugozi - to tie with a rope (cause rope to tie).

You have already learned kwigisha. Now you can see that it is simply the causative form of kwiga. Thus “to teach” is “to cause to learn.”

158. The past suffix of causatives is -sheje or -shiye (according to the A I U rule). Do not use the usual past stern. e.g. yakoresheje - he used, caused to work.
Note: There are quite a number of verbs which form their causatives irregularly, but in general you can follow the above rule.

Exercises:

I. Make the following verbs causative, and give the meaning of the causative forms:

1. gukora  
2. kugenda  
3. guhinga  
4. gukunda  
5. gushima  
6. gusenga  
7. gusoma  
8. guhana  
9. gutinya  
10. gutanga

II. Translate into English:

1. Umugabo yibye amafaranga; abantu baramufashe, kandi ubu baramubohesha imigozi.  
2. Nitemesheje imbugita urutoke.  
3. Sasa ibyatsi mu ikawa (Coffee plantation) yawe, ariko ntuahingishe isuka.  
4. Mukundishe Imana imitima yanyu yose.  
5. Ndashaka kuryamisha umwana.  
6. Umwigisha wacu arandikisha abana.  
7. Ukoreshe ifu nyinshi mu gukora umugati.  
8. Abana bakarabishe isabune kugira ngo bange ico ku ntoke.  
9. Abigisha batangishije abana umwe-umwe (see par. 227) amafaranga atanu.  
10. Umufundi yubakishije amatafari menshi.  
11. Isaka yaririmbishije neza mu rusengero uyu muni.

LESSON 79. Causatives (continued)

Vocabulary

guta (taye) - to throw away, lose  
gukura (ze) - to grow (int.)
gukura (ye) - to take away, subtract  
kujugunya (nye) - to throwaway  
guseka (tse) - to laugh, laugh at  
kuvoma (mye) - to bring water from source  
uburo - millet

(Causatives of these verbs are formed regularly, except that of gukura and guklira. These are gukuza and gukuza.)

159. Some common irregularities of the causative:

1) Verbs ending in -za often replace -za with -risha or -resha. e.g. gukiza - to save  
   gukirisha - to cause to save, save by means of

2) Some verbs ending in -ra change -ra to -za. e.g. kubabara - to suffer, kubabaza  
   (past -je) - to cause to suffer, hurt (tr.)

   Note: kubabara also has a regularly formed causative: kubabarisha - to use  
   something to cause to suffer. e.g. kubabarisha Yesu ibyaha byacu - to cause Jesus to  
   suffer by our sins.

3) Some verbs ending in -za in their usual form are already causative, but take a  
   different causative form when the instrument of the action is named. e.g. kwoza is  
   the causative of kwoga. But "to wash with soap" is kwogesha isabuni.
4) Guseka has two causatives: **gusekesha, gusetsa** - to cause someone to laugh. The two forms are used quite interchangeably, but **gusetsa** is the more common. e.g. gusekesha umwana - to make the child laugh; Ibyo uvuga biransetsa - what you say makes me laugh.

5) Monosyllabic verbs must be learned one by one, for there is no rule to determine whether the suffix will have **e** or **i**.


It is difficult to know for oneself how to form causatives since many follow the regular rule, and others follow those given above. Thus it is important to learn from the Africans each verb. But knowing these rules will help you to recognize what you hear, and by far the majority of verbs form it regularly with **-isha** or **-esha**.

**Note**: **guhesha**, though active in form, really is passive in meaning: kubahesha - to cause them to be given.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Three boys lost their books, and the teacher punished them with a stick. 2. Have you (some) millet? Grind it with stones. 3. Jesus saved us with His blood. 4. Rain and sun make the plants grow (= cause plants to grow). 5. I want to praise God with my whole life. 6. Let’s not worship God with just (only) words, but let’s worship Him with our hearts. 7. Wash the windows with a lot of clean water and clean cloths.

**LESSON 80. Objects with Causatives**

**Vocabulary**

- gutata (se) to make trouble, fight with verbally kubora - to rot, spoil (int.) (caus. kubozia)
- inkoni - walking stick
- uburakari - anger

160. With causative verbs one is apt to have two objects, for in English two verbs are really involved: “to cause to” and “to work” (as for exammple in gukoresha). These two objects may be:
1. One a secondary subject and the other a true object. e.g. gukundisha Petero Yohana - to cause Peter to love John. Petero is really the object of “to cause to” and the subject of “to love”; thus it is a secondary subject, while Yohana is the true object.

b. The two objects may be one an instrument and the other the object. e.g. kwitemesha imbugita urutoke - to cut the finger with a knife. Imbugita is the instrument with which the finger is cut.

In both of these examples the true object comes last, with the secondary subject or the instrument immediately following the verb; However, you will hear and see examples where the true object comes first: e.g. Ukundishe Imana umutima wawe - love God with all your heart. If the secondary subject involves a group of words and the true object is only one word, the secondary subject will come last. One cannot make a definite rule about the order, for it may vary. Experience will teach you. This is also true of the following rule. Occasions are rare when this will be a problem to you.

161. The two objects may both be pronouns in the verb. e.g. bawumubohesheje - they tied him with it (a rope).

When it is thus, the secondary subject or the instrument usually comes first with the true object following, except the pronouns: n - me, ku - you, and tu - us, always come second and only the context can determine the meaning. e.g. kumugukundisha - could be: to cause him to love you; or, to cause you to love him.

162. If one is a pronoun and the other is a noun, only the context can determine the meaning. e.g. Umwigisha amukundisha umukene - could be, the teacher causes him to love the poor man; or, the teacher causes the poor man to love him. However, in most instances the context will make it clear.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The teacher causes the boys to read the books. 2. The man’s troubles make him sad (hurt him). 2. The old man’s anger made them laugh at him. 4. Let us praise God with our lives, not just words. 5. The bad meat will spoil all the food. 6. Peel the potatoes. What shall I peel them with? 7. The grass in the kraal is very tall. Do you have a machete? Cut it with it. 8. I want to build a house and I have (some) good, bricks. Come (pl.) help me build it with them. 9. My father’s anger hurts me very much in my heart. Jesus can save us from it. 10. You (girl) told your brother bad news. It makes him fight with you (verbally).
LESSON 81. Review

I. Questions:
1. Conjugate kumena in the far past affirmative (no words following).
2. Conjugate kubika in the far past negative.
3. Conjugate guseka in the immediate past affirmative.
4. What is the A I U rule?
5. The possessive adjective contains two parts. What is the purpose of each? How are they determined?
6. When two nouns follow a causative verb, what is the proper order?
7. When two pronoun objects occur in a causative verb, what is the proper order? Are there any exceptions?

II. Make the following verbs causative, and translate the causative form.

1. kugenda 7. gufasha 13. kwubaka 19. kugwa
2. guhinga 8. gusenga 14. gufata 20. kwica
3. kuvuga 9. kuririmba 15. kwumva 21. gucana
4. gushima 10. kubika 16. gushobora 22. kurya
5. kuzana 11. kuguma 17. gusaba 23. guha
6. guteka 12. kwandika 18. kumenya 24. kureba

III. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. your father 8. your (s.) mother
2. my mother 9. his sisters
3. his brother (older) 10. their mothers
4. your (s.) sister (you - boy) 11. my younger brother (I - boy)
5. their father 12. your (pl.) brother (you - girls)
6. my younger sister (I - girl) 13. my older sister (I - girl)
7. my father

IV. Translate into Kinyarwanda: (Do not translate words in parentheses)

1. (the cows) their tails 10. (young men) their anger
2. (the cat) its hair 11. (kraal) its Douses
3. (the deaf man) his ears 12. (the house) its kitchen
4. (God) His word 13. (the young girls) their lamp
5. (the fire) its smoke 14. (God) His kingdom
6. (the blind man) his tongue 15. (the leopard) its body
7. (the cow) its milk 8. (Cod) His love
   its name: 16. (the house) its door
8. (the tree) its leaves “10. (the country) its name:
   its leaves “16. (the house) its door
9. (fleas) their legs 17. (friends) their letters
18. (lamp) its light
LESSON 82. Gutya, Gutyo

Vocabulary

umwete - zeal, enthusiasm
kwaka (tse) - to shine (int.)
kugira umwete - to be zealous, enthusiastic, energetic
kunebwa (bwe) - to be lazy
gushidikanya (nye) - to doubt

Gutya, gutyo. These adverbs mean: gutya - like this; gutyo - like that. This is one of the most difficult sounds in Kinyarwanda. Practice with an African until you can say it well.

These adverbs are variable, that is, they usually take the same prefix as the verbs they modify.

yabikoze at yo - he did it like that
babikoze bat yo - they did it like that
tugire dutya - let’s do it like this
ndakora ntya - I do like this.

When following an infinitive it takes gu- in agreement with the infinitive. e.g.
Turashaka kuririmba gutyo - we want to sing like that.

With the imperative it may be: kora utya, or, kora gutya - do like this.

Note: Do not try to use this form for “Do like John”. (For that, see par. 251.)

A common error of beginners is to want to always use -tya, or -tyo, but it is better to make it agree with the verb it modifies.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Let us be zealous to sing like this. 2. Plane (s.) the boards like that. 3. It is not nice to laugh like that. 4. The children run like this. 5. I did it like this, but you (pl.) do it like that. 6. It’s difficult to catch wild animals because they fear people like that. 7. Do you (s.) write like this with a pencil? 8. Stop laughing like that and help your sister (to a boy). 9. Because God’s love
is strong like that, He wants to save everybody. 10. We can’t bring in (from sun) the clothes, because they are wet like that.

LESSON 83. Passive Verbs

Vocabulary

kudoda (ze) - to sew  kwita (se) - to name, call

ishyari - jealousy - fite ishyari - to be jealous (momentarily)

kugira ishyari - to be jealous (as a characteristic, or in past)

164. Do not confuse passive voice with past time! Passive voice is used when the subject receives the action of the verb. ego The man beats the dog - active voice; the dog is beaten by the man - passive voice. Passive verbs are formed simply by inserting w before the final a of the verb:

gukunda - to love
kubona - to see

gukundwa - to be loved
kubonwa - to be seen

165. The passive is often followed by na meaning “by”. e.g. Dukundwa n’Imana - we are loved by God.

166. The verb kwita must not be confused with guhamagara. Kwita is “to call” only in the sense of “to name.” e.g. Bamwise Yohana - they called (named) him John. Bahamagaye Yohana - they called John (to come).

This verb in the passive is the commonest way to ask someone his name. Witwa nde? - what is your name? Literally, you are called who? (nde = who).

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The child is taken out of school because he is very bad (“to take out” is followed by mu or ku, like kuva). 2. The man is sent to Butare to buy food. J. The books are brought by the boys and
we shall use them in school tomorrow. 4. Jesus is called Savior because He came to save all
people. 5. We are redeemed by the blood of Jesus. 6. The Word of God can be trusted because it
is (use ari, see par. 185) the truth. 7. We want that all your (pl.) things be prepared because we
will go very early. 8. The francs (which) are offered today will be used to buy books. 9. Our
guests are called by the teacher so that they may go to see the school. 10. Give me (some) food
quickly for (because) I am dying of hunger (i. e. I am being killed by hunger).

LESSON 84. Past of Passives

Vocabulary

kuremera (reye) - to be heavy  
kuremerwa (rewe) - to be heavy laden, loaded down

guca (ciye) - to tear (tr.) as paper, cloth  
gucika (tse) - to tear (int.), break (as rope)

gutora (ye) - to choose, elect, pick up, find  
gutoranya (nije) - to choose (out of many)

kugaya (ye) - to despise, scorn  
intoboro - hole (as in cloth, paper)

umwubatsi - builder

167. Most passives form their past just like the past of the active verb, except that
the **w** is retained.

   gukunda - yakunze  
kuboha - yaboshye
   gukundwa - yakunzwe  
kubohwa - yaboshywe

168. However, there are some verbs which do not follow this rule: 1) Verbs ending in
**-ma** and forming the past in **-mye**, in the passive have no **y**. kuvoma - yavomye,
kuvomwa - yavomwe

2) Verbs with passive ending in **-rwa**. gutwarwa - yatwawe, kuremerwa -
yaremerewe

Note: kuremera is used like any stative verb: biraremereye - they are heavy;
biraremerewe - they are heavily laden.

If the active past ends in **-ze**, the passive past ends in **-zwe**. kugira - yagize, kugirwa -
yagizwe

3) The verb **kugaya** becomes in the passive, **kugawa**, with the past **yagawe**.

4) Verbs whose regular past is **-nnye** change to **-nywe** in the past passive.
yamennye - yamenywe

5) Verbs in **-ba** make the past passive **-bwe**. guhemba - yahembwe, kureba -
cyarebwe

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

1. Ibuye (insert “which”) ryagawe n’abubatsi ni Yesu. 2. Twatowe n’Imana kugira ngo tube
   abana bayo. 3. Imyenda y’umugore yagawe n’abandi kuko yacitse. 4. Umuhungu mubi agawa

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The leopard was feared by all the people because it caught two goats. 2. Many francs were offered by the people in the church. 3. The boys were punished by the teacher because they were absent many days. 4. The chair was broken and the boy’s clothes were torn. 5. There are many little holes in the new clothes. 6. The teacher’s house will be torn down because it was built badly. 7. How many francs were the workmen paid? I don’t know. 8. The lamps were lit by the houseboy (umuboyi) because it got dark early. 9. My sister’s (boy speaking) new clothes were stolen yesterday, and she doesn’t have (any) francs to buy more. 10. We know that there are wild animals here because they have been seen by many people.

LESSON 85. Passives of Monosyllabic Verbs

Vocabulary

inzoga - beer, alcoholic drink  
urusyo - grindstone (for millet, etc.)

ikinyobwa - peanut, ground nut, lima beans, beverage  
akabomba - peanut, ground nut

icyubahiro - respect, honor, reverence  
ubwiza - glory, beauty

ijuru - sky, heaven

169. The monosyllabic verbs form their passives in -bwa. In the past forms the b drops out leaving just the w.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Passive</th>
<th>Past Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guca</td>
<td>gucibwa</td>
<td>yaciwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kugwa</td>
<td>kugubwa</td>
<td>yaguwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guha</td>
<td>guhabwa</td>
<td>yahawe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunywa</td>
<td>kunyobwa</td>
<td>yanyowe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gusya</td>
<td>gusebwa</td>
<td>yasewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guta</td>
<td>gutabwa</td>
<td>yatawe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kurya</td>
<td>kuribwa</td>
<td>yariwe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

170. Some of these passives could not be translated literally into English, but have an idiomatic use, such as kugubwa. Kugubwa means “to be settled down nicely” - yaguwe neza, or, “to have good pleasant living.” Kugubwa nahi is the opposite. Kuribwa mu nda means “to have a stomach ache”.

171. Guhabwa is not “to be given” in the sense of “the book was given to me”, but: nahawe igitabo is “I was given a book.” Thus, guhabwa really means “to receive.” It is often used for the future of -fite.
Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The clothes were thrown away because they were torn. 2. Two trees were cut down by the men, but the fundi didn’t want them. 3. Let us give reverence (to) God for (because) He should (ikwiriye followed by infinitive) be given it. 4. I want to go to (mu) heaven far we shall see Jesus and we shall have much joy. 5. Much milk was drunk by the children. 6. Is the meat of the sheep eaten by the Banyarwanda? No, they don’t eat it. 7. Were my papers thrown away? Go, look for them because I want them. 8. Jesus left His glory in heaven and came to earth (isi). Here He was hated by many people. 9. All the beer was poured out when(igihe) the people were saved. 10. The good bricks and tiles were chosen by the builder; the others were thrown away.

LESSON 86. Demonstrative Adjectives

Vocabulary for this lesson is to learn the forms in the first two columns of the following table.

172. Demonstratives. Do not be frightened by the many forms listed in the table. Once you observe how each different kind of demonstrative is formed; it is not difficult. It is very important to know when each kind of demonstrative is to be used.

173. Uyu. This is formed by the initial vowel of the class prefix and the verb prefix for that class. When two vowels come together it is inserted between them. (The first class singular is an exception to this, u being used instead of a). e.g. aha - a is the initial vowel of the first class plural prefix, and -ba is the verb prefix. iyí (3rd cl. sing.) -i is the initial vowel of the noun prefix, and i is the verb prefix. Since the two vowels come together they are joined by y, thus making iyí.

Uyu (and the other forms in the first column) means “this”- referring to that which is near: uyu mugabo - this man.

174. Uwo - that. This is simply the initial vowel of the class plus the possessive particle with a changed to o. It means “that” which is quite near.

175. Uwo can also mean “that” in the sense of that which has already been mentioned, while uyu may mean ”that which I am about to mention,” or at least which has not yet been mentioned. e.g. ayo magambo - those words (which I have already spoken) aya magambo - these words (whiCh I am about to speak)
176. An important rule: Demonstratives precede their nouns (there are a few rare exceptions to this), and remove their initial vowels. e.g. abo bagabo - those men.

Remember the rule about **mu** and **ku** with demonstratives (par. 102). e.g. muri abo bantu - among those people.

**DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>this</th>
<th>that</th>
<th>that yonder</th>
<th>that</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st sing.</td>
<td>uyu</td>
<td>uwo</td>
<td>uriya</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>aba</td>
<td>abo</td>
<td>bariya</td>
<td>ba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd sing.</td>
<td>uyu</td>
<td>uwo</td>
<td>uriya</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>iyi</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>iriya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd sing.</td>
<td>iyi</td>
<td>iyo</td>
<td>iriya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>izi</td>
<td>izo</td>
<td>ziriya</td>
<td>za</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th sing.</td>
<td>iki</td>
<td>icyo</td>
<td>kiriya</td>
<td>cya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>ibyo</td>
<td>biriya</td>
<td>bya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th sing.</td>
<td>iri</td>
<td>iryo</td>
<td>ririya</td>
<td>rya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>aya</td>
<td>ayo</td>
<td>ariya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th sing.</td>
<td>uru</td>
<td>urwo</td>
<td>uriya</td>
<td>rwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>izi</td>
<td>izo</td>
<td>ziriya</td>
<td>za</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th sing.</td>
<td>aka</td>
<td>ako</td>
<td>kariya</td>
<td>ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>utu</td>
<td>utwo</td>
<td>turiya</td>
<td>twa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th sing.</td>
<td>ubu</td>
<td>ubwo</td>
<td>buriya</td>
<td>bwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>aya</td>
<td>ayo</td>
<td>ariya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th sing.</td>
<td>uku</td>
<td>ukwo</td>
<td>kuriya</td>
<td>kwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>aya</td>
<td>ayo</td>
<td>ariya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th s. &amp; pl.</td>
<td>aha</td>
<td>aho</td>
<td>hariya</td>
<td>ha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:
1. That child is very sick; give him (some) medicine. 2. Those words of Jesus help us to follow Him. 3. Take these books to those teachers. 4. Let us sing that song again. 5. Take those cows from the path. 6. The teacher is going to read (do not translate “going”) the Word of God. These are good words. 7. I can't make (= cause to) the child drink this medicine. 8. Put away this milk but pour out that milk. 9. All these people can’t go in that boat; it is very small. 10. In these days there are thieves everywhere.

LESSON 87. Demonstratives (continued)

Vocabulary: Learn the forms in the 3rd column of the table in the preceding lesson.

177. Uriya. This demonstrative means “that” of something not near the speaker, but in sight. It could be “that over there”, or, “that yonder”. It is formed by the prefix of the verb plus -riya (except in 1st class sing. it is u instead of a). e.g. uriya mugore - that woman over there. The more distant the object, the longer drawn out the i is. e.g. ur-i-i-ya musozi - that hill way over there.

This demonstrative, like all others, precedes the noun removing the initial vowel. Now you can recognize the word hariya that you learned some time ago.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Bring those boxes over there. 2. That man (quite near) is John’s younger brother. 3. Those stones yonder near the school, bring them here for we shall use them. 4. Those sweet potatoes over there are spoiled; throw them away. 5. That river over there is very long and wide. 6. Do you see that sand over there? It’s good; we want to use it in building (= to build). 7. Go (pl.) cut that tall grass over there for we shall use it to roof with. 8. That church yonder was built by the people of the church. They gave many francs and worked many days. 9. Those doors over there were made by a fundi. They’ll use them in the new school. 10. The millet in those fields yonder is not good. There was too much (= a lot of) rain, so (rero) it isn’t strong.

LESSON 88. Demonstratives (continued)

Vocabulary
umupira - tire, ball, eraser, rubber (any kind), sweater
umwanya - place, space, time
guheba (bye) - to be unable to find
none - now, today
nonaha - right now

kubura (ze) - to lack, not have, not find, fail to
gukira (ze) - to get well, heal(int.)
uruguma - wound, cut (fresh)
umufuka - bag, sack

180. **Kubura.** In addition to the meaning given in this vocabulary, this word is used in the future negative to express the idea of certainty, e.g. Ntazabura kugenda - he will certainly go (lit. he will not fail to go)

181. **Igihe.** This word and umwanya, both of which mean “time” are not always used interchangeably. Igihe means “time” in the sense of days, weeks, years, etc., or a certain specific time. It may also sometimes be used for a duration of time.

e.g. Waje gihe ki? - what time did you come?
Wamazeyo igihe kinini? - Did you spend’a long time there?
Mu gihe cyo gusoma abana bicara neza - At reading time (time to read) the children sit quietly.

182. **Umwanya.** Umwanya usually implies duration or space of time. Sometimes it is used like uburuyo.

e.g. Simfite umwanya wo kugikora - I don’t have time to do it.
Nta mwanya mfite, nzaza ejo - I don’t have time, I’ll come tomoorrow.

It also has the other meanings as given in the vocabulary.

Ntidufite umwanya wo kukujyana ~ we don’t have room to take you.

**Exercises:**

1. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:
1. The boy’s Parents prevented him from bringing (= to bring) those sweet potatoes. 2. That bad tire is flat (dead); we will be late to go. 3. Where are those medicines? The people want them. 4. Did you take those seeds? I do not see them. 5. That thief came again in the night; let’s catch him. 6. Yesterdays that foolish man came back here. Can’t the doctor heal him? 7. Where is that machete you cut grass with yesterday? 8. The doctor has treated well your father’s wounds, he will certainly get well. 9. Will you take me to Butare? I’m sorry, I don’t have room. 10. When will those workmen be paid their francs? I’ll give them to them on May 3rd.

LESSON 89. Not Yet Tense

**Vocabulary**

kubyara (ye) - to give birth  
gukanguka (tse)- to awaken (int.)  
gukangura (ye) - to awake (tr.)  
gusoroma (mye) - to pick, gather produce (vegetables, etc.)  
inkere (or, -ri) - berries

Note: **Gusoroma** is to gather fruit or vegetables as for a meal. One usually says: guca ibigori. **Guca** may be used for certain fruits, too.

Note 2: Observe examples of gukanguka and gukangura:

- umugabo yakangutse - the man woke up  
- bakanguye umugabo - they woke the man up

183. **Not-yet tense.** This tense is formed by the negative prefix + verb prefix + -ra + present verb stem: nti-tu-ra-genda - we haven’t gone yet.

The tone on -ra- is high and long.

Notice the difference: singenda - I’m not going, sindagenda - I haven’t gone yet, ntaragenda - he hasn’t gone yet.

In vowel-stems the a is elided before the vowel of the stem: ntarogaza amasahane - she hasn’t washed the dishes yet. In English this sounds like a past tense, but in Kinyarwanda the form is more like that of the present. This tense is also used in the affirmative, especially in questions: e.g. Mbese aragenda? - Has he gone yet? (Tone high and long)

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into kinyarwanda:

1. John’s wife hasn’t given birth yet. 2. How many eggs are there? I haven’t counted them yet. 3. I want to go now, but the workmen haven’t come yet. 4. That man (referred to before) is not yet saved, but he likes to hear the Word of God. 5. Haven’t you put the clothes in the sun yet? 6. My wife was sick in the night. She’s sleeping now, she hasn’t awakened yet. 7. Did you pick the tomatoes yet? Yes, I picked them and there are a lot (many). 8. Hasn’t your (s.) brother (older) stopped drinking (= left beer) yet? 9. What is your (s.) new baby’s name? We haven’t named him yet (= haven’t named him a name). 10. Have the people begun to build the new church? No, they haven’t finished making (= finished to make) the bricks yet.

LESSON 90. Review

I. Questions:

1. Conjugate kwiga in the -ra- present affirmative, together with gutya, making the proper agreements.
2. How is the passive voice formed? Give two examples.
3. How do most passive verbs form their past?
4. There are two different ways of making the past of passives which end in -rwa. What are they?
5. Give the passive (present and past) of: guca, guha, gusya, guta, kurya.
6. What is the difference between kwita and guhamagara?
7. How is the demonstrative adjective for “this” formed?
8. How is the demonstrative adjective for “that”(near) formed?
9. How is the demonstrative adjective for “that over there” formed?
10. What is the order in a sentence when a noun is modified by a demonstrative?
11. What happens to mu and ku when used with a demonstrative?

II. Make uyu, uwo, uriya, wa, agree with the following nouns, singular and plural. Translate the expressions for no. 1 only.

1. inka 3. ahantu 5. ishuri 7. umurima 9. icyuma
2. ubwato 4. umwana 6. uruzi 8. akantu 10. ukuguru

III. Vocabulary quiz. Give in Kinyarwanda. Give also past suffixes of verbs:

1. tire 15. heaven
2. to doubt 16. jealousy
3. berries 17. wound
4. to be heavy 18. to tell
5. to get well 19. to awake (tr.)
6. to beseech 20. to sew
7. zeal 21. to lack
8. reverence 22. grindstone
9. beer 23. hole (in clath)
10. to give birth 24. to chase
11. glory 25. to name
12. to shine 26. to hinder
13. to rule 27. to refuse
14. to awaken (int.) 28. now
LESSON 91. Dependent Clauses

Vocabulary

gukena (nnye) - to need, be poor, lack
indimu - lemon, orange
kwihangana (nnye) - to endure, be patient, wait patiently
ivuriro - dispensary

gukina (nnye) - to play
icunga (5th) - orange (not used in some areas)

Note: gukena is “to need” in the sense of “to not have”; also for the idea of poverty. If you are at the table and there is no salt there, you would say, “Ndashaka umunyu” rather than “ndakena umunyu”, because you probably do have some salt in the house.

184. You have already learned that no -ra- tense may be used in a dependent clause, either -ra- present, -ra- past,-or -ara- past. However, the not-yet tense does retain -ra- in dependent clauses. The only words you have learned so far which introduce dependent clauses are: kuko, ka, and kugira nga when followed by the negative. You will learn others later.

185. After kuko and ka, the verb “to be” when in 3rd person must always be ari, regardless of the class and number of the subject, except when an expression of place faollows the verb. e.g. ute izo nyama kuko ari mbi - throw away that meat because it is bad. (Note that it is not ziri mbi, as one might expect.) But: Sinshabara kubana inzu kuko iri kure - I can't see the house because it is far away. Since kure is a word of place the verb makes the agreement. For this use, the negative of ari is atari (see following paragraph).

186. Dependent negative. The negative in dependent clauses, in all tenses, is not formed like other negatives at all. It is formed by -ta- placed after the personal prefix.

kuke ntagenda - for I’m not going
kuke atagenda - for you are not going
kuko tutagenda - for he is not going
kuka mutagenda - for we are not going
The dependent negative of -ri follows the same rule: ntari, utari, etc.

2) The change-down rule does not apply to syllables preceding the negative, but the -ta- is subject to the rule. e.g. tutagenda – badasaba

3) The past dependent negative is: batagiye, batakinnye, batubatse.

4) Before vowel-stems the a elides: kuko atihannye - because he did not repent.

187. a) Kugira ngo (in order that) introduces a dependent clause. In the affirmative it is followed by the subjunctive; but in the negative it takes -ta- and the final vowel is not changed to e.

E.g., Yabeshye kugira ngo batamufata - he lied so they wouldn’t catch him
Bashyize umutego mu nzu kugira ngo bafate imbeba - they put a trap in the house so they might catch rats.

b) Notice this: Sinshobora kukigura kuko ndafite amafaranga - I can’t buy it because I don’t have any money.

Though normally t following a consonant does not change to d, in this particular case it does (-ta- negative in 1st pers. sing.). While it looks like the -ra- present affirmative, you will not be confused because you cannot have a -ra- present in a dependent clause.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. That man over there cannot see because he is a blind man. 2. You can all learn in one room because you are not many. 3. The workmen will finish today because they are not lazy. 4. Don’t bring that lamp for it is not good. 5. I can’t finish that work today for I haven’t time. 6. I don’t have (any) flour to make bread, because I can’t untie the sack. 7. The boys don’t have food because they didn’t gather the sweet potatoes today. 8. The “fundis” were not paid today because they didn’t wait (patiently). 9. The people are afraid because they didn’t catch the thieves. 10. The teacher’s child is crying because the other children didn’t play nicely.
LESSON 92. Dependent Not-yet Tense

Vocabulary

gushya hiye) - to cook (int), be done, be cooked, ripen, burn (int.)
gushyuha (shye) - to be hot, get hot
gushyushya (hije) - to heat (tr.)
guhisha (-hije) - to ripen (esp. fruit)
unguhana - locality, neighborhood (usually mu mihana)
unganji - city, town, large village
igiturage- small village, cluster of huts
inkweto - shoe, sandal

Note 1: igiturage refers to a little group of huts as one sees on a hillside, but it is not an organized village. Umujyi - a large group of huts, or a city.

Note 2: Observe uses of gushya: inzu irahiye - the house is burned down (or burning). Ibishyimbo birahiye - the beans are done (cooked). Note that these verbs are in the stative. Gushya is also usually used in the stative: amazi arashyushye - the water is hot. Inkere zirahishije - the berries are ripe.

188. The dependent not-yet tense simply follows the regular personal prefix + -ta- + -ra- + present stem: e.g. kuko ataragenda - for he hasn’t gone yet.

189. One use of this dependent not-yet tense is to express the idea of “before”, as a conjunction. e.g. Zana inkwi utaragenda - bring the wood before you go (lit. when you have not yet gone)

Note that no word is necessary for “before”.

In modern Kinyarwanda, another way of saying “before” is: mbere yo kugenda - before going, or, mbere y'uko inyama zishya - before the meat is done

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I can’t begin to cook the potatoes because the water isn’t hot yet. 2. We aren’t going now for the workers haven’t been paid yet. 3. Heat the food again for we haven’t eaten yet. 4. Bring the clothes in (from sun) before it rains (before fain falls). 5. Sweep the floor before you start to work outside. 6. The water is very hot; prepare the coffee before you go. 7. Are the oranges ripe yet? Yes, they are very ripe. Pick them all. 8. Have the children finish reading before they play.
9. Take that child to the doctor; he can’t get well before he receives medicine. 10. Be patient; we can’t eat before the meat is done.

**LESSON 93. Demonstrative Pronouns; -kwirie, -rinda, -gomba**

**Vocabulary**

- kugomba (mbye) - must (Obligation)
- -kwiriye - ought, should, be enough, be necessary, be worth (par. 191)
- kurinda (nze) - ought, should, wait for, protect, guard (par.191)
- igihano - punishment
- gukorwa n’isoni - be ashamed
- isoni - shame

190. The demonstrative adjectives (except wa, ba, etc.) when used by themselves, not modifying a noun, are the demonstrative pronouns. Their form is not changed.

  e.g. Zana ibitabo. Ni ibi? Oya, si iqyo. - Bring the books. These? No, not those.
  Nabonye ibyo ejo - I saw those (things) yesterday.

191. -kwiriye, -rinda, -gomba.

1) These are all verbs which are followed by an infinitive to convey the idea of obligation. Kugomba is the strongest meaning “must”. e.g. Akwiriye kugenda - he should go, Ntiyarinze kumubwira - he didn’t have to tell him, Tugomba kuvuga ukuri - we must tell the truth

   In the affirmative -kwiriye and -rinda are almost interchangeable, though -kwiriye is used in most cases. But in the negative note the difference: ntakwiriye kugenda - he should not go; ntarinda kugenda - he doesn't have to go; ntagomba kugenda - he must not go have to go

2) Note this use of -kwiriye

   Mbese ibijumba birakwiriye? Yee, birakwiriye - are there enough sweet potatoes? Yes, there are enough.

   Observe the same idea with a passive form:

   Abigishwa bose ntibakwiwe ibitabo - there were not enough books for all the pupils.

3) -kwiriye may mean “to be worthy of”:

   Sinkwiriye gushimwa gutyo - I am not worthy to be praised like that; or, Ntibinkwiriye gushimwa gutyo.

   Note: -kwiriye is only used with this past suffix; while -rinda and -gomba may be used in any tense.

**Exercises:**
I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. You (pl.) ought to confess your sins and begin to follow God. 2. They ought to be ashamed because they haven’t yet finished their work. 3. Do you want a mat? Shall I bring this one? 4. We don’t have to cut all the grass today. 5. There are two beds; do you want to lie on that one? 6. The workmen want to be given more (use kongera) francs; they do not praise those they got. 7. They must work hard before they will be given more. 8. God is worthy of reverence; let us praise Him with our lives and words. 9. We must go to Butare soon, because there are (some) things we need. 10. You (s.) mUst not tear this paper. We don’t have any more.

LESSON 94. Relative Clauses

Vocabulary

umusaraba - cross ikiganza - palm of hand (sometimes used for whole hand)
kuganira (riye) - to talk, chat
kuronona (nnye) (or, konona) - to spoil, damage (tr.)
kurwana (nye) - to fight (int.)

192. Relative clause with noun or pronoun antecedent. Relative clauses (those introduced by who, which, that, etc. have no introductory word in Kinyarwanda for “who”, “which”, etc. All rules which apply to verbs in dependent clauses apply in these (see Lessons 91 and 92). The singular prefix for 1st class is u not a, as for other verbs. Observe the following examples:

Abantu bakunda Imana barayikurikira neza - the people who love God follow Him well.
Umugabo ukora hariya ni data - the man who is working over there is my father.
Abahungu bataje mu ishuri bazahanwa - the boys who didn’t come to school will be punished.
Sinshaka injangwe idafata imbeba - I don’t want a cat that doesn’t catch rats.

The tone in the relative is not the same as in the ordinary prefixless. Listen to an African say them.

Note that in these examples it would be almost impossible to make them make sense by reading any other way than as a relative. Thus, though there is no introductory word you should not have trouble with them. You have already encountered some examples of these in the exercises where you were told to insert “which” or “who”.
193. The preceding examples all had the antecedent (preceding noun) as the subject of the dependent verb. Now note these examples where the antecedent is the object of the dependent verb:

**Umuntu** nahamagaye araje - the **person whom** I called is coming. **Imbwa** mfite zirya ibiyo byinshi - the **dogs which** I love eat much food. **Abantu** Yesu ashaka gukiza - the **people whom** Jesus want to save.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda.

1. The men who went home early are lazy. 2. I don’t see the books which I brought. 3. The love which God showed us in Jesus is very great (much). 4. The sheep which you bought, is it here? 5. The cows which went in the corn are sick now. 6. Those people who are chatting over there ought to go to work. 7. The food you destroyed is that which we bought last week (see par. 195). 8. At the time when Jesus was put on the cross, they drove (-teye) nails into His hands. 9. The oranges which you (pl.) picked aren’t ripe yet. 10. Can’t you endure patiently in these few troubles which you have now? They will soon end.

**LESSON 95. Relative Clauses with no Noun Antecedent**

**Vocabulary**

kwakira (riye) - to receive (as with hands)  
kwakira abashyitsi - to receive, welcome guests  
isi (3rd) - earth  
inonyi - little bird  
gusohoka (tse) - to go outside  
gutembera (reye) - to visit, go for a walk

194. The singular prefix in a relative clause with no noun or pronoun antecedent is **u-**. You can recognize it in speech as different from the second person singular or the first person relative form, because the **u** is longer drawn out. In fact, it often sounds like **uwu-**.

It is **uw-** before a vowel-stem verb: e.g. uwiba - **he who** steals. Ushaka kugura igitabo aze - he who wants to buy a book, let him come.

The past prefix is **uw-**: e.g. uwabonye ingwe - he who saw a leopard. For the plural the prefix is **aba-**. e.g. Abazaza bazaano akazi - those who come will get work.
When referring to a thing it takes the regular verb prefix and the initial vowel of the class of the thing referred to (often 4th cl. for indefinite “it”). Ikitubuza gukora ni uko tudafite imbaraga - that which hinders us from working is that we are not strong (do not have strength).

195. When only a pronoun is the antecedent of a relative clause and it is the object of the dependent verb, the demonstrative pronoun is used: abo nkunda - those whom I love. Umuntu w’Imana akora icyo ishaka - a person of God does that which He wants.

196. When the antecedent is 1st or 2nd person, the verb prefix of the dependent verb is the prefix for third person plural relative. e.g. Twewe abakora iminsi yose turashaka guhembwa - we who work every day want to be paid.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Those (things) which I want are in the school. 2. He who wants to go with Bwana must come early. 3. That which is praised by God is a good heart. 4. He who follows God shall be given many blessings. 5. The little birds which I saw in the tree have gone. 6. Those who go for a walk in the evening must come back (when) it gets dark. 7. We have troubles on the earth, but we who trust Jesus will have everlasting joy (= joy that does not end) in heaven. 8. What (= that which) I told you to do is to heat the food so that those who are hungry can eat. 9. I am calling those who know (how) to make bricks. 10. The things which we learned in school will help us (for) many years.

LESSON 96. Pronoun Nde?

Vocabulary

kwicara (ye) - to sit  
gupima (mye) - to measure, weigh, examine  
kuruka (tse) - to vomit  
gukorora (ye) - to cough  
inkorora - cough  
gusuzuma (mye) - to examine  
kugera (ze) - to measure

Note: **gupima**, Swahili for “to measure” is used for measuring anything; weight, length, quantity, examination in school, or examining the sick. **Gusuzuma**, Kinyarwanda for “to examine” is used for examining the sick, examining a problem or situation, etc. **Kugera** usually indicates measuring with some kind of instrument, and only for length or quantity. Examinations in school are **ibibazo**, or as verb, **kubaza**.
197. **Nde?** Plural: **Bande?** means “who?” It is used only in questions, not in relative clauses. This word is used only of persons and expects in reply a name of a person or persons, or at least a description. Do not use it for “which one”. Learn these various uses of **nde?**

1) With the verb “to be”:

- Uri nde? - Who are you? (s.)
- Muri bande? - Who are you? (pl.)
- Ni nde? - Who is it? Who is he?
- Ni bande? - Who are they?
- Umuntu nabonye ni nde? - Who is the person I saw?

Observe the word order. **Nde** comes at the end of the phrase to which it belongs.

2) As subject of a verb. In this use it is used with **ni**, and the clause following is a relative clause.

- Ni nde wasohotse? - Who went outside? (lit. it is who who went… )
- Ni bande batazanye amafaranga? - Who didn’t bring francs?

3) As object of verbs, thus “whom?” (here it follows the verb).

- Wabonye nde? - Whom did you see?
- Mutinya bande? - Whom do you fear?
- Witwa nde? - What is your name? (lit. you are called who?)

4) With possessive “whose?”

- Iki gitabo ni icya nde? - Whose book is this?
- Izo nka ni iza bande? - Whose cows are those?

**Note:** **uwa, icya, ibya**, etc. means literally “the one of” or, “the ones of”. This is a possessive pronoun formed by the possessive particle preceded by the initial vowel of the class. The same form will be used in the reply. **Inka ni iya nde? Ni iya Paulo** - Whose cow is it? It is Paul’s.

5) After preposition. (Here instead of **ku** the form **kwa** is used.) **Tugende kwa nde?** - To whom shall we go?

Note: In pronunciation, because **nde** is a one-syllable word, it throws the accent onto the last syllable of the word preceding it: **uri nde? witwa nde?**

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Whom did you send to Cyangugu? 2. Whose are the three books which are on the table? (see note below). 3. Who are the men who are sitting on the floor? 4. To whom did you send the letters you wrote yesterday? 5. Who is the woman you examined? 6. Who came to the school to call the boys? 7. Whose voice did we hear in the night? 8. Who will help that poor man build a house (= those who will are who)? 9. I saw a woman who is very sick. She vomited and could not sit up. Who is she? 10. At whom are the children laughing?

Note: In sentences no. 2, 3, and 4, and others, the word nde must follow the relative clause. See par. 197 no. 4).

LESSON 97. Adjective -he?

Vocabulary

icyibo - shallow basket             intambara - battle, strife
igitebo - deeper basket (no lid)    umusambi - small grass mat
igiseke - tall pointed basket       inama - council, counsel, advice, committee
intango - basket (various kinds)

Note: Inama may refer either to a group which meets to make plans, or it may refer to the counsel or advice given by that group, or an individual.

198. The adjective -he? with its various agreements, means “which?”. It is used only in asking questions and carries the thought of “which one among several?” It is declined just like uyu + -he. **However, the singular for 1st and 2nd classes is uwuhe instead of uyuhe**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>uwuhe</td>
<td>abahe</td>
<td>Class 6</td>
<td>uruhe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>uwuhe</td>
<td>iyihe</td>
<td>Class 7</td>
<td>akahe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>iyihe</td>
<td>izihe</td>
<td>Class 8</td>
<td>ubuhe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 4</td>
<td>ikihe</td>
<td>ibihe</td>
<td>Class 9</td>
<td>ukuhe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 5</td>
<td>irihe</td>
<td>ayahe</td>
<td>Class 10</td>
<td>(not used)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

199. Some rules for the use of -he?

1) It usually precedes the noun it modifies and removes the initial vowel of the noun, ikihe gitabo - which book?
2) The second syllable is long and accented. That is the reason the change-down rule does not affect the k’s and t’s, as you note in ikihe and akahe and others.
3) It may follow its noun, if there are other adjectives modifying the same noun, in which case this one must come last, e.g. inka zawe nini zihe? - which of your big cows? But it is more often used in the pronoun form, like this: Urashaka ikihe muri ibi bitabo - Which of these books do you want?
4) Following mu or ku it loses its initial vowel: mu yihe? - in which?
5) Like other interrogative words, it is often preferable to put the phrase containing “which?” at the end of the sentence or clause. e.g. Muri izi ndabyo nce izihe? - Which of these flowers shall I pick?

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. There are many houses in this village; which one do you live in? 2. Which baskets (shallow) shall we take tomorrow? 3. The council chose one man among these four. Which one? 4. In that battle five men were killed. Which ones? 5. I want to buy a small mat, but you have many. Which one shall I buy? 6. Which vegetables do you want me to gather (= want that I gather)? 7. Which of those men yonder is your brother (to a girl)? 8. Which of the pupils are sick (with) coughs? They should go to the dispensary now. 9. From (in) which river did you drink that dirty water? 10. In which month did your friend come to see you? In November.

LESSON 98. Prepositional Form of Verb

Vocabulary

guhindukira (ye) - to turn around (int.) guhindukiza (je) - to turn around (tr.)
guhunga (nze) - to flee impunzi - refugee (one who flees)
umuryango - family, clan umuryango - doorway

Note: The two words umuryango are pronounced slightly differently. On the one for “doorway” the -rya- is a high tone, on “family” it is low. Umuryango is “clan” rather than “family” as we think of it, though it is increasingly used. for “family.”

200. Prepositional Form. This is made by chaing the final a of the verb to -era or -ira, according to the A I U rule (par. 157)– kuzana - to bring, gukora - to work, kuzanira - to bring to, for gukorera - to work for.

The translation of this form in its simple use is just “to”, “for”, “at”, etc. Nzamugurira igitabo - I’ll buy a book for him.

Note: With verbs of motion, (go, run, flee, etc.) the prepositional ending is not used to express “to” e.g. Yagqrutse imuhira - he returned to his home.

201. Some verbs form this a bit irregularly:
1) Most verbs ending in -za change to -riza or -reza (A I U rule). gukiza - gukiiza, kubaza (ask) - kubariza
2) Many verbs in -sha or -shya change to -shiriza or -shereza, -hiriza or -hereza (A I U rule). Causatives are included here.
gushyushya - to heat, gushyuhiriza - to heat for
gukoresha - to use, gukoreshereza - to use for (someone, not a task)

There are other irregularities which you will meet, but these are the main ones. Most verbs form the prepositional regularly.

202. The past of the prepositional form ending in -ira or -era is -iye, or -eye. e.g. yandikiye, yakoreye.

Those ending in -za become -je e. g. Yambarije Bwana - he asked Bwana for me.

Exercises:

I. Make the following verbs prepositional and translate:

1. kwandika 5. kwubaka 9. kubika
2. kugaruka 6. guteka 10. kwanga
3. kugira 7. gusaba 11. konona
4. gusoma 8. guhunga 12. kurakara

II. Translate into English:


III. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Turn (pl.) to God and He will save you and give you new hearts. 2. The man saw a leopard and he fled to the doorway of his house. 3. Heat much water for me because I want to take a bath. 4. I haven’t seen my brother (I, a girl) (for) many months; I want to write to him. 5. We want to know the names of the teachers; will you ask John for us?

LESSON 99. Uses of Prepositional Form

Vocabulary

kurega (ze) - to accuse (of)               gusarura (ye) - to harvest
kugesa (she) - to harvest millet, small grains inyanja - ocean, lake
kugeza ubwo - until

203. Uses of Prepositional Form:
1. The simple use of “to”, “for” (sometimes “in”, “against”, “from”): kuzanira - to bring to, gushimira - to praise for.

Note: Some verbs’ natural meaning implies “to” or “for”, such as guha. In those cases the prepositional form is not necessary. However, those verbs may have a prepositional form for one of the other uses given here.

2) Time. When a future time is uncertain the prepositional form is used with the future, particularly in clauses introduced by ubwo, igihé, aho, meaning “when” or “where”. Past or present verbs in clauses introduced by ubwo may also take this form. Sinzi ubwo nzagarukira - I don’t know when I shall return. Igihe Yesu azazira azatujyana mu ijuru - When Jesus comes He will take us to heaven.

Also, if igihé is the antecedent of a relative clause, the verb in that clause will be in the prepositional form, unless the time is specific and known. Sihzi igihé yapfiriye - I don’t know the time (when) he died.

3) Place. If it is stated that the action of the verb is done in or at a particular place or region, the prepositional form is usually used. e.g. Tuzashimira Imana mu ijuru - we shall praise God in heaven.

Sometimes the prepositional is not used in these cases where we might expect it. Observe it used in this way in these Scripture verses: Math. 2:1; 3:1; 11:20, 21.

Note: Here also if the natural meaning of the verb implies place it is necessary to use the prepositional form. Verbs such as: kurara, kwicara, etc.

204. Prepositional form of Monosyllabic Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kuba</th>
<th>kubera</th>
<th>kunya</th>
<th>kunyera</th>
<th>kurya</th>
<th>kurira</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guca</td>
<td>gucira</td>
<td>gupfa</td>
<td>gupfira</td>
<td>kuva</td>
<td>kuvira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kugwa</td>
<td>kugwira</td>
<td>gushya</td>
<td>guhira</td>
<td>kuza</td>
<td>kuzira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guha</td>
<td>guhera</td>
<td>gusya</td>
<td>gusera</td>
<td>kujya</td>
<td>kugira</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: These are all formed regularly. Just remember whether the vowel is i or e. Also, in each case the i or e is long.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:
1. When my father dies he will give me all his things. 2. Jesus healed many people at the shore (inkombe) of the lake. 3. I don’t know when the workers will cut those trees. 4. We will go to Kigali when we have (use “see”) the time. 5. Let us work for Jesus until He comes. 6. I asked the policeman (umupolisi) for mercy and he had it for me (awkward in English, but normal in Kinyarwanda). 7. That boy has been accused of many bad things. Let’s pray for him so that he will repent and ask God for forgiveness. 8. They are harvesting the millet this week. The women will grind it in their kraals. 9. That old man over there doesn’t know (how) to read but he loves to tell (to) us stories (parables). 10. Please look for my knife for me. I have searched everywhere and I fail to find it.

LESSON 100. Review

I. Questions:

1. Conjugate gukena in the present dependent negative.
2. Conjugate kwicara in the present dependent negative.
3. What is the 3rd person singular prefix (1st class) for the relative without an antecedent? The plural?
4. Explain the difference between: -kwiriye, -rinda, -gomba. Give examples of each in a sentence. How do you say: You don’t have to?
5. How would you say “before he comes”? (2 ways)
6. Is there any difference between the demonstrative adjective and the demonstrative pronoun?
7. What does nde? mean? What is the plural form of it?
8. Give examples using nde? 1) with “to be”, 2) as subject of verb, 3) as object of verb, 4) with possessive.
9. What does -he? mean? Give its form with each class agreement.
10. How is the prepositional form of the verb made?
11. Give three uses of the prepositional form.

II. Give the prepositional forms of the following and translate:

1. gukora 6. kuzana 11. kuza 16. kwandika 21. guca
2. kuvuga 7. guteka 12. kubika 17. kwubaka 22. kunywa
3. gushima 8. kugura 13. kugira 18. gutuma 23. gupfa
5. gusoma 10. kubona 15. gukiza 20. kubaza 25. kuba

III. Vocabulary quiz:

1. isi 10. igiseke
2. igihano 11. guhindukira
3. gukena 12. guhindukiza
4. gukorora 13. gusarura
5. kwihangana 14. kuganira
6. intambara 15. inyoni
7. kurega 16. inama
8. kongera 17. umujyi
9. ivuriro 18. igiturage
LESSON 101. Reading Lesson

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kinyarwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ibyondo</td>
<td>mud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kurema (mye)</td>
<td>to create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingurube</td>
<td>pig gutangara (ye) - to wonder at, be amazed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inkende</td>
<td>monkey umwicanyi - murderer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mwene</td>
<td>son of, daughter of nka - like (pl. bene)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In the following paragraphs you will note the syllable -ka- in some verbs. You will learn about that tense later, but for the present translate -ka- as “and”. You may see some other things that you don’t understand altogether; however, do the best you can with the translation.

I. Translate into English. You may translate present verbs as past where it makes sense to do do.

Imana yarangije kurema igitoke, nyuma Satani na we afata inkende ayicira munsi yacyo. Arongera afata ingwe ayicira aho nyine (right there) munsi y’icyo gitoke. Arongera afata ingurube ayicira aho nyine munsi yacyo. Rero (then) icyo gitoke kinyunyuza (suck in) amaraso ya za nyamaswa zose Satani yiciye munsi yacyo.

Ni cyo gituma (reason) umuntu anywa inzoga nke akabanza gukina nk’inkende, ngo yongera kunywa akarwana nk’ingwe; nyuma akaza arivurunga (roll oneself) mu byondo nk’ingurube. (from Imigani. by E. Sibomana, p. 22)

II. Translate this Scripture passage: (1 John 3:13-19). Try to do it without first reading the passage in English.

Bene Data, ntimutangazwe n’uko (that) ab’isi babanga. Twebwe tuzi ko twavuye mu rupfu, tukagera mu bugingo, kuko dukunda bene Data. Udakunda aguma mu rupfu. Umuntu wese wanga mwene se n’umwicanyi; kandi muzi ko nta (no) mwicanyi afite ubugingo buhoraho (everlasting) muri we. Iki ni cyo kitumenyesha urukundo icyo ari
cyo, ni uko Yesu yatanze ubugingo bwe ku bwacu (see par. 207); natwe ikidukwiriye ni uko twatanga ubugingo ‘bwacu ku bwa bene Data. Arike Ufite ibintu byo mu isi, akareba ko mwene Se akennye, akamukingira (close up for him) imbabazi ze, urukundo rw’Imana rwaguma (would remain) muri we rute (how)? Bana bato, ntidukundane (-na, or, -ne = each other) mu magambo cyangwa ku rurimi, ariko dukundane mu byo dukora no mu by’ukuri. Icyo ni cyo’kizatumenyesha ko turi ab’ukuri.

LESSON 102. Miscellaneous Words

Vocabulary

kuzimira (ye) - to lose one’s way, go astray
umwanzi - enemy
kugerageza (je) - to try, tempt
kubera - because of, on account of
ku bwa - for the sake of, in (my) opinion

205. Ntuza. This word means “what’s-his-name.” It is used when for the moment one cannot remember the name of a person. e.g. Hamagara ntuza uriya - call what’s-his-name over there.

When a thing is referred to, the specific name being forgotten, the form is intuza. Sometimes one hears something like this: Ndashaka kugura intuza-intuza - ikaramu - I want to buy what-you-call-it - a pencil.

206. Naka. This word (sometimes doubled: naka-naka) means “so-and-so.” “In English we sometimes say: “He goes to so-and-so and says such-and-such.” In Kinyarwanda this would be: Ajya kuri naka avuga binaka. Or, one may say: Ku munsi munaka - on such-and-such a day.

207. Ku bwa and kubera. Kubera means “on account of,” “through the agency of,” as well as “because of.” Listen for African usage of this word to get the right slant of meaning. Ku bwa may be used like this: Ku bwanjye Petero arabeshya - in my opinion, Peter is lying. Or, Yesu yapfuye ku bwacu - Jesus died for our sakes.

Note that this is ku followed by the possessive with bu- prefix. ku bwanjye, ku bwawe, ku bwacu, ku bwayo, etc. e.g. Kubera abantu bose - because of all the people.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

tugire umwete mu mirimo yacu. 9. Abantu baratangaye cyane igihe Yesu yababwiraga ko dukwiriye gukunda abanzi bacu. 10. Mbese mwbonye ntuza ku ishtui ejo?

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Jesus was: tempted for our sakes in order that He may help us in our temptations (make noun out of verb here- “our being tempted”). 2. Try (pl.) hard (cyane) to do what God wants and He will help you. 3. I am looking for what-you-call-it - a tool to pound (gukubita) nails with - a hammer. 4. Jesus died on the cross because of your sins and my sins. 5. The men will go to Kibuye tomorrow to begin to build a new house. 6. The fundi sent me to look for what-you-call-it. But I can’t find it. Tell me what you want and I’ll help you look for it. 7. When you go to Kigali please buy four pails for me. 8. Don’t stay home because of me; I’m not very sick, and I want you to go with the others. 9. For whom did they weave that tall pointed basket over there? 10. When the visitors came here, they lost their way and we waited for them (for) five hours.

LESSON 103. Reflexive Verbs

Vocabulary

kunezeza (je) - to please, make happy  kurinda (nze) - to watch, guard, protect
guhiisha (shije) - to hide (from) (tr.)  ubusa - in vain, nothing, for nothing
kwishima (mye) - to be happy, satisfied

208. Reflexive verbs. By reflexive is meant that the subject does the action to himself. This is formed by attaching -i- to the stem of the verb, or -iy- if it is a vowel-stem verb. gukunda - to love; kwikunda - to love oneself; kwigisha - to teach; kwiyigisha - to teach oneself.

This attached prefix actually becomes a part of the stem and the forms are treated as any other vowel-stem verbs, in all respects. e.g. Umuhungu aribaza - the boy asks himself (wonders). Umwigisha ariyubakira inzu - the teacher is building a house for himself.

209. The reflexive can be used making the subject the direct object, as in kwikunda - to love oneself; or, it may be made an indirect object when used with a prepositional form of the verb, or with a prepositional suffix (Lesson 115), as in ariyubakira above. e.g. kwigurira igitabo - to buy a book for oneself.

210. The imperative of reflexive verbs differs from ordinary vowel-stems in that it must end in e. e.g. Ikize - save yourself.

Exercises:

I. Make the following verbs reflexive and translate:

1. kwereka 4. guklira 7. gutema
2. gtikiza 5. gutanga 8. kubabaza
211. **Nta**, meaning “no one”, “not”, “not any”, may be used either as an adjective or pronoun. Thus used it is followed by a relative clause, which is subject to rules for dependent clauses.

Actually, in some ways nta seems to be a verb form, meaning “there is not”. In all the examples given here it suits both sense and form to consider it this way. However, it does replace the English adjective or pronoun “no,” “none,” “no one.”

1) When used as an adjective it precedes the noun and removes the initial vowel. The following verb is a dependent one, the literal meaning being “there is not... who...” e.g Nta muntu waje - not a person came, or, no one came (lit. there is not a person who came). Nta gitabo mfite - I haven’t a book (lit. there is not a book which I have).

2) When used as a pronoun the relative begins with **u**- (as forms in par. 194), in reality **uwu**- and the initial vowel ( **u** ) of **uwu**- is dropped. But in modern orthography the **w** is not written, though it is pronounced. Nta ushaka kugenda (one says: nta wushaka) - no one wants to go (lit. there is no one who wants to go).

With the vowel-stems likewise the **u** of **uw**- is dropped after nta, but here the **w** is written. Nta wanga umwana we - no one hates his child.

3) **Nta** very frequently is placed at the beginning of the sentence.
212. **Nta** is sometimes used with **na**, which in this instance means “even.” Nta n’umwe uri hano - not even one is here (this is simply an emphatic way of saying “no one.”)

The number, as **umwe** here, would agree with the class of whatever was being referred to.

213. This word, **nta**, plus the relative, is common for “anyone” (really “no one”) in asking questions. e.g. Nta wabonye igitabo cyanjye? - has anyone seen my book? (lit. Is there not he who has seen my book?)

However, the Banyarwanda might sometimes say, “Nta gi tabo cyanjye wamboneye - lit. No book of mine have you seen for me?

Note also these examples: Ibijumba birahari? Oya, nta bihari. - Are there any sweet potatoes? No, there are none. Nutza arahari? Oya, nta uhari - Is what’s-his-name here? No he is not here.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. No lodging place were they able to find. 2. Those old men have some bad habits; but not one wants to leave them. 3. Has anyone seen my pencil? 4. I haven’t any francs to buy beans. 5. No one builds a house on sand. 6. No visitors came, although we prepared lodging for them. 7. Doesn’t anybody lack a songbook (= book of songs)? I picked one up here. 8. Didn’t anybody go to harvest the millet? 9. No news of our friends has come yet, although they went home last month. 10. Are there no “fundis” who know how to put a roof on a house?

**LESSON 105. Further Notes on Nta**

**Vocabulary**

ikiirondwe - tick  inda - louse (tone different from that of “stomach”. Ask an African.)
inyenzi - cockroach ubutunzi - riches, wealth
intozi - pincher ant

214. **Nta** as object is usually used in the adjective form. It may not be used by itself. e.g. Nta biti nabonye hariya - I saw no trees over there.
Since **nta biti** is antecedent of the relative clause **nabonye**, as well as object of that verb, it precedes the verb. Nta can never follow a verb as object.

215. **Nta** as pronoun object:

Nta we nabwiye - I told no one
Nta bo muzabona - You will see none (e.g. workers).

a) **Nta** with the demonstrative pronoun (see par. 190) may be used as object of the verb, referring to a thing. (Remember that **nta** removes the initial vowel, even from a pronoun.) Ufite inka? Nta zo mfite - Do you have cows? I have none. Ntuza afite isuka? Nta yo afite - Does what’s-his-name have a hoe? He has none.

b) **Nta cyo** is commonly used for “nothing”. Ufite iki? Nta cyo - what do you have? Nothing.

c) **Nta ho** is used for” nowhere”, usually placed at the beginning of the sentence. e.g. Wagiye he? Nta ho nagiye - Where did you go? Nowhere.

d) **Nta bwo** may mean “never.” It may also just be a strong negation. Nta bwo azakora icyo - he’ll never do that.

216. In a dependent clause **nta** does not change: e.g. Karisa ntashobora kugura imyenda kuko nta mafaranga afite - Karisa cannot buy clothes because he has no francs.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. There is nowhere he has not gone in this country. 2. I saw no one in your kraal yesterday. 3. I don’t know about (ibya) this child because he says nothing. 4. There are no cockroaches in her kitchen. 5. This man wants to buy clothes although he has nothing. 6. Are there pincher ants in your garden? I haven’t seen any. 7. Don’t tell anyone that thieves stole that cow. 8. I haven’t seen a monkey or a leopard anywhere in this country. 9. Have you climbed this mountain? I haven’t climbed any mountain. 10. This young man never writes to his older brother.

**LESSON 106**

**Reciprocal Form of Verb**
Vocabulary

gukurura (ye) - to draw, pull, drag  
amarira - tears

kwegera (reye) - to come near to  
guhanagura (ye) - to wipe, wipe away

gutonganya (nije) - to rebuke, reprove, scold

217. The reciprocal form is made simply by adding -na to the verb stem. In a few verbs it is -nya. You will learn those by experience. One of these is gufashanya - to help each other; another is kwigishanya - to teach each other. There are two meanings to this ending. But the meaning implied by the term “reciprocal” is “one another” or “each other.”

gukunda -to love  
kubona - to see  
gukundana- to love each other  
ubonana - to see each other

218. There are two important things to be remembered.

1) Only a transitive verb becomes reciprocal, for it must have an object: “one another”.
2) A reciprocal verb does not usually have any other direct object following, since the object is “one another”.

219. 1) The past of these verbs ends in -nye. Those which end in -nya form the past with -nije. Bakundanye - they loved each other. Bafashanije - they helped each other.

2) A verb may have both a prepositional suffix and a reciprocal. In this case there may be another direct object expressed. e.g. Kwandikirana inzandiko - to write letters to each other. Often when there is a prepositional and reciprocal, the prepositional is repeated twice, before and after the -na. e.g. kugiriranira ishyari - to be jealous of each other.

Note these examples: gusengeranira - to pray for each other, guhingiranira - to cultivate for each other, kurwaniranira - to fight for each other.

Exercises:

I. Make the following verbs reciprocal and translate.
1. kubwira  3. gufata  5. kwanga  7. kwizera  9. kurega
2. kwereka  4. kwegera.  6. kureba  8. kubeshya  10. guseka

II. Translate into English:
Nabonye abahungu babiri bakubitana, ariko nababujije, nyuma nababwiye ko bakwiriye gukundana.

III. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Those two men are afraid of each other because both have riches and they are jealous (of) each other. 2. I am going to America soon, but let us write to each other. 3. The boys hated each other but now they love each other because Jesus has saved them. 4. The girls showed each other their new clothes. 5. God’s people love each other, help each other, and trust each other. 6. Let’s help each other wash these dishes; you (s.) wash them and I’ll dry them (wipe). 7. The girls were shedding (= crying) many tears, but we told them not to (= that they not) sorrow. 8. Please get near to each other, all of you, so that you can hear what I say. 9. Those thieves are lying to each other. I can’t trust anyone (of them). 10. Those who respect each other are able to help each other.

LESSON 107. Associative Verbs

vocabulary

gutera ye) - to throw, plant  
imbyiro - dirt (on body, clothes)

isoko (5th) - market  
igiciro - price, value

isoko (3rd s., 5th pl.) - fountain, source (of water)  
inyunyungu - profit, gain

umwanda - dirt (esp. as an floor)  
kwuma (mye) - to dry (int.)

220. **Associative verbs** are formed exactly like reciprocal verbs - By the addition of -na (sometimes -nya). The past is also the same, ending in -nye (or, -niye). This form means to do a thing together, or, with.

- gukora - to work gukorana - to work together
- kuguma - to stay kugumana - to stay together

You are not apt to confuse these two kinds of verbs, for they scarcely ever occur in the same verbs, and the meaning is usually obvious. Usually reciprocals are transitive verbs and associatives are intransitive, but not always.

221. a) When the second subject is named, that is, the one with whom the thing is done, the word na meaning "with" is also used. e.g. gukora n'abandi benshi - to work together with many others.

b) Remember the use of kujyana: Petero ajyana abana - Peter takes the children. Abana bajyana na Petero - the children go with Petero.

If no second subject is expressed or object, with associative verbs it is important to be careful about using transitive verbs where the meaning would be “each other” rather than “together” e.g. turirimbe - let us sing about each other (not, let us sing together). In cases like this, to avoid the reciprocal meaning one would have to use the simple form of the verb with hamwe e.g. Turirimbe hamwe - let’s sing together.
Often in this instance the prepositional form is used: Turirimbire hamwe.

Gusengana is to “worship each other” (not “pray together”).
Gusengera hamwe is “to pray together.”

Sometimes the associative form is used like this: Garukana igitabo cyanjye - come back with my book, thus, return my book.

222. Gutera. This verb is used in a multitude of ways with many idiomatic expressions. It is derived from the verb guta - to throwaway, or lose. Note these phrases:

- gutera ipasi - to iron (clothes) (Sometimes kugorora imyenda is used instead)
- gutera imbuto - to plant seeds
- gutera umupira (or, amabuye) to throw the ball (or, stones), play ball
- gutera ubwoba - to frighten, make afraid (throw fear)
- gutera icyubahiro - to bring, cause honor, respect

From these examples you will be able to understand the use of this word in other similar expressions when you hear them. As in the last two examples, it often has the idea of “to cause.”

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Those men work together well because they like each other. 2. The teachers will spend the night together so that they may have opportunity to pray together. 3. Let us sing together hymn no. 26; (write out number). 4. I scolded the thief with many words because I wanted to frighten him. 5. Iron all the clothes today before they dry completely. 6. People who live together (use kuba) must trust each other. 7. The girls went down to hoe with the women in the valley. 8. Let’s do what (the things which) God wants so that we may bring Him honor. 9. My brother (girl speaking) wants his children (wants that...) to learn together with the teachers’ children. 10. The pupils went out together (in order) to play ball.

LESSON 108. Adverb -te?

Vocabulary

kuruha shye) - to be tired
kuruhuka (tse) - to rest
kuruta (se) - to surpass          kurusha (shije) - to surpass

kusumba (mbye) - to surpass          kumera (ze) - to be like, be in a certain state, germinate

uruhushya - permission, rest, vacation, time off          si byo? - isn’t it? isn’t that so?

Note: si byo? is often added after a statement, like “n’est-ce pas?” in French; but do not use it to excess.

223. -te? This word, meaning “how?” (only in questions), though an adverb, has a variable prefix. The prefix is the same as the verb prefixes for each class and also for each person. Ameze ate? - how is he? (usually used only of one who has been ill) Ameze neza - he’s well (better). Nta ko ameze - he’s no better.

Note that in these expressions, ameze is a stative without -ra-.

Here are the various forms:

1st person nte dute
2nd person ute mute
3rd person ate bate
2nd class ute ite
3rd class ite zite
4th class gite bite
5th class rite ate
6th class rute zite
7th class gate dute
8th class bute ate
9th class gute ate
10th class hate

You will hear this word in expressions such as these:

bakora bate? - how are they working?
tugire dute? - what shall we do? (lit. how shall we do?) This could also be: tugira dute? bigenda bite? - how are things going?
nkora nte (or, nkore nte)? - what shall I do? (or, how shall I do?) hameze hate? - what is it like there?
intozi zigenda zite? - how do pincher ants walk?

224. Comparison.

a) The verb kuruta is most commonly used for this when an adjective is involved. Note these examples: Uyu mwana ni munini kuruta uyo - This child is bigger than that one. Iki giti ni kirekire kuruta icyo - This tree is taller than that one. Umwenda wa Mariska ni mwiza kuruta uwa Ana - Mary’s dress is nicer than Ana’s. Ihene yanjye ni nto kuruta intama - My goat is smaller than a sheep.
b) Two other verbs, **kurusha** and **gusumba**, are also used for comparisons. It seems that **kurusha** is used when the comparison has to do with a verb that shows activity, but if the verb is a stative **kuruta** is used.
e. g. Paulo aririmba neza kurusha Petero - Paul sings better than Peter.
Umukozi wanjye akora cyane kurusha uriya - My workman works harder than that one.
Umugozi muremure urakomeye kuruta uwo mugufi - The long rope is stronger than the short one.
c) When the comparison is made by means of a noun the verb is **kurusha**. e.g. Arusha Yohana u wenge - he is wiser than John.
d) **Gusumba** is often used in comparing height, or length, and no other word for “height” is necessary. You will hear it used for other comparisons sometimes as well. e.g. Mukuru wanjye aransumba - My older brother is taller than I.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. How are things going in your school? 2. What shall we do since the others are not coming to help us? 3. How can I rest now for there is much work? 4. How will you (pl.) pay the workers today? You have no francs. 5. How are your cows now? They were sick, weren’t they? 6. What is your new kraal like? Is it nicer than the other one? 7. I heard that your father is very ill. How is he now? He’s no better. 8. How did they build, since it’s raining (= rain falls) every day? 9. My sister (boy speaking) knows how to weave baskets (flat ones) better than my mother. 10. I like (use “praise”) these shoes more than those, but the price is very big.

**LESSON 109. How to Say “Why?”**

**Vocabulary**

inzika - grudge, crossness    ishavu - sadness
isabune (3rd s. 5th pl.) - soap    kurenganya (nije) - to persecute, treat unjustly
kugira ishavu - to be sad    kugira inzika - to be cross

225. There are a number of ways of saying “why?”, each with its own particular uses.

1) **Ni kuki?** This is used as we use the word “Why?”, all by itself.

   Yagiye kwa muganga. Hi kuki? - He went to the doctor. Why?
Or one may say: Hari kuki? (especially for past time).
Kuki may also introduce a clause, in which case the clause following is a dependent one. Also, the **ni** may then be omitted.

e. g. Kuki utazanye amafaranga - Why didn’t you. bring the money?

2) a. **Present or future** tense with a clause: **Ni iki gituma?** e.g. Ni iki gituma ukubita umwana: - Why are you beating the child? Ni iki gituma uzajya i Cyangugu? - Why will you go to Cyahgugu?

   b. **Recent past:** (the **-ra-** of the immediate past is lost from the main verb because it is a dependent clause.) e.g. Ni iki gitumye ukubise umwana? - Why did you beat the child (just now)? (Here you must use gitumye.)

c. **Past:** Ni iki cyatumye followed by the prefixless present of the main verb. e.g. Ni iki cyatumye ukubita umwana - Why did you beat the child? Ni iki cyatumye abigisha bajya i Cyangugu ejo? - Why did the teachers go to Cyangugu yesterday?

3) For the negative one commonly uses this construction with **kubuza**: Ni iki cyakubujije gukora neza? - Why didn't you work well? (lit. What hindered you from working well?)

Note that it is the infinitive which follows cyakubujije.

One may also use the proper tense of **ni iki gituma** followed by the **-ta-** negative. - e.g. Ni iki cyatumye udakora neza? - Why didn’t you work well?

4) Another way of expressing “why?” is the prepositional form of the verb, followed by **iki?** - in other words, “for what?” e.g. Unyangira iki? - Why do you hate me? (lit. For what do you hate me?)

This form is chiefly used when there is a pronoun object in the verb, though not only then.

Note: **Kuki?** is usually considered less polite than **ni iki gituma**, and may imply disapproval of the action.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

persecute these two young men? They didn’t steal anything. 8. Why (for what) is that woman punishing her little child? 9. Why did you (just now) drag that big box into this room? 10. Why did you wait until today to tell me that news?

LESSON 110. Review

I. For the following verbs write the causative, prepositional, passive, reflexive, reciprocal (or associative) forms:

1. gukunda 3. kubona 5. kuvuga 7. kubeshya 9. gutinya
2. gukora 4. gufasha 6. kwanga 8. guha 10. gutuma

II. Questions:

1. What is the difference between kujya and kugenda?
2. What is the difference between ntuza and naka?
3. What is the difference between reciprocal and associative verbs?
4. What does kubwa mean? Kubera?
5. Give five expressions using gutera, and translate them.
6. What is the word for “why?” when it does not in traduce a clause?
7. How do you say “why?” when introducing an affirmative clause (other than what you gave in no. 6)? 1) present or future, 2) recent past, 3) far past.
8. Give two ways for saying “why?” in negative clauses.
9. What does -te? mean? How are its prefixes determined?
10. Write a sentence as an example of a comparison for each of the commonly used words, and translate your examples.

III. Vocabulary Quiz:

1. intozi 11. inyenzi 21. to be tired 31. tears
2. uburakari 12. isoko 22. to hide 32. stomach
3. kubera 13. gusigara 23. to persecute 33. to rebuke
4. ubusa 14. imfura 24. to try 34. although
5. kujya 15. inzika 25. grudge 35. louse
6. uruhushya 16. ikironde 26. dirt (on body) 36. to wipe
7. icumbi 17. kwuma 27. to lose one’s way 37. riches
8. inyungu 18. inkende 28. to rest 38. mud
9. igiciro 19. gutangara 29. to draw near 39. to plant
10. umwanzi 20. kurema 30. to please 40. to guard
LESSON 111. How to Say “Some”, The Conditional Vocabulary

ihwa (5th) - thorn  ibyago - troubles
ikimenyetso - sign niba - if

Note: Niba cannot be used for “if” in all cases, but mainly is used for the simple present, future, or immediate past, as. “if you do thus...” Further explanations about “if” will be found in more advanced grammars. Niba elides before vowels in speaking, but not in writing. e.g. Niba agenda - if he goes.

226. “Some”. Often when we would say “some” in English, there is no word needed for it in Kinyarwanda. e.g. Do you have some sweet potatoes? - Moose ufite ibijumba? Here no word is needed for “some”.

However, there is a word for “some,” which is the stem of the word for “one” with a plural numeral prefix. (In 3rd and 6th class the prefix is zi-.) e.g. abantu bamwe - some people; ibintu bimwe - some things; inka zimwe - some cows. But note there is a difference. In the first example above “some sweet potatoes”, the meaning was “any sweet potatoes,” while in the later examples the meaning was “some as part of a larger group.”

This word for “some” is sometimes used in the reduplicated form: bamwe-bamwe, or, bamwe na bamwe. It may be used either as an adjective or a pronoun. It often means “a few.”
Abantu baje? Bamwe-bamwe. - Have the people come? Some (of them). Ibitabo bimwe biri ku meza, ariko ibindi sinzi aho biri - Some books are on the table, but I don't know where the others are.

Some adverbial uses of this construction are: rimwe na rimwe - sometimes; hamwe-hamwe, or hamwe na hamwe - some places, here and there.

227. **One each, two each, etc.**

Nzabahemba abiri-abiri - I will pay you two (francs) each.
Mwinjire umwe-umwe - enter one by one.
Mu kugura amagi turatanga atanu-atanu - In buying eggs we pay five (francs) each.

228. The simple conditional is formed by: personal prefix + a + present stem: **n-a-kunda** - I would like.

Observe the necessary vowel contractions:

- nakunda twakunda
- wakunda mwakunda
- yakunda bakunda

Learn the correct tone from an African.

a) This form is usually translated by “would”.

Nakuncia kujya i Cyangugu ejo - I would like to go to Cyangugu tomorrow.
Mbese washobora kumfasha? - Could you (= would be able to) help me?
Niba ufite umwanya, washobora kuruhuka gato - If you have time you could rest a little.

b) With vowel-stems the entire infinitive is retained, except when there is an object pronoun in the verb: **n-a-kw-ibuka** - I would remember.

Mbese wakwemera kujyana na bo? - Would you be willing to go with them?
Wakwandikira inshuti yawe igiye i Buraya? - Would you write to your friend if he goes to Europe?
Moose wabyemera? - would you agree to it?

c) The negative is formed regularly:

- sinakunda ntiyakunda ntiyakwemera

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. There are many stones here. Take away some of them. 2. Are there any sweet potatoes in the garden? Some, but not many. 3. Sometimes the people of God have troubles but He helps us in everything. 4. Some thorns are in the path; take them away. 5. Some difficulties are very bad, but let us not fall because of them. 6. Wouldn’t you (s.) bring me some oranges? I don’t want all of them. 7. Although we would do only good (things), some people would accuse us. 8. If I tell you (pl.) all that God did for me, you would be amazed. 9. Wouldn’t you (s.) like to rest now? 10. If the goats should go in the garden, they would destroy the little plants.

LESSON 112. Adjectives Expressed by Verbs Vocabulary

kwere (ze) - to be white, pure; bear fruit
kugorwa (we) - to be unfortunate

guhora (ze) - to cool (int.), be quiet, always do

gufungana (nye) - to be narrow

kweza (jeje) - to make white, pure

kugorwa (we) - to be unfortunate

Note: Ukwezwa is the term often used for holiness or purity of heart.

229. You have already learned some verbs which take the place of adjectives in English. This is the most common way of expressing descriptive adjectives. Most verbs which take the place of adjectives are usually used in the stative voice (though kwere is not; nor kunebwa). e.g. Umuntu unebwa - a lazy person. Here are some you have already learned:

- gukonja - to be cold, damp, wet
- gusonzwa - to be hungry
- gukomera - to be strong
- kunezerwa - to be happy

Others are given in this vocabulary. You will hear many others. Whenever the English adjectives are translated this way, the verb is really a relative clause (except when used as a predicate adjective), thus the -ra- drops out. e.g. a strong man - umugabo ukomeye. a happy child - umwana unezerewe. damp clothes - imyenda ikonje

If the adjective is in the predicate (i.e. follows verb “to be”), the regular stative is used. e.g. inzira irafunganye - the path is narrow. In negative and dependent clauses the -ra- drops out.

This form is often used to express the English participle form in -ing. A sleeping child - umwana usinziriye:

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Do not bring the clothes in (from sun); they are damp. 2. The man’s cows are very fat; he will sell them (for) many francs. 3. God wants that his people have pure hearts; He can make them pure. 4. A strong man can carry heavy loads. 5. The path of life is very narrow, and the path of sin is wide; but he who goes in the narrow path is very happy. 6. Your child is very fat. I think he is very healthy (=strong). 7. A rich person ought to help (-tabara) the unfortunate. 8. We are asking the adults (= those who are grown) to come on Friday to build the school. 9. A sorrowing woman is outside; wouldn’t you go to help her? 10. The happy children of God should cause others to know what Jesus did for them.

LESSON 113. Reduplicated Verbs Vocabulary

kunyeganyega (ze) - to shake, tremble, (esp. earth, objects) ikibyimba - boil, abscess
igufwa (or, igufka) - bone gushakasha (tse) - to look for everywhere
umuswa (sing. only) - white ants kubeshyabeshya (shye) - to amuse (child), deceive, fool

230. Reduplicated verbs. Some verbs redouble the stem to give a slightly different meaning:

kugenda - to go kugendagenda (nze) - to take a walk
gushuka - to deceive gushukashuka (tse) - to deceive (lightly), fool
gukora - to work gukorakora (korakoye) - to touch, feel of
kuvanga - to stir kuvangavanga (nze) - to mix throughly
kureba - to look at kurebareba (bye) - to look all over (in search)

There are other verbs which have only the doubled form (no single form existing). All reduplicated verbs change only the stem of the last part of the word in forming the past.

yagendagenze - he went for a walk
yanyegeanyeze - the earth shook
yakorakoye urubaho - he felt of the board

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. This man is not deceiving us; he is very sick (with) boils. 2. The earth shook in the night; it made me afraid. 3. Don’t try to fool me; I know very well that you have francs. 4. I cannot go for a walk for I haven’t time. 5. The boys amused the child until he laughed. 6. Did you mix the sugar and butter well? Then add some flour and salt. 7. The child is feeling of the fur (hair) of the cat. 8. The thieves looked everywhere for the money. They didn’t know what (= that) to do. 9. Your abcesses are completely healed. I have finished all I can do (work) for you. 10. Wouldn’t you (s.) amuse the baby so that he’ll stop crying?

LESSON 114. Quotations, Direct and Indirect

Vocabulary

umurabyo - lightning
inkuba - thunder
urubura - hail (no pl.)
kuyoberwa (bewe) - to not know, be ignorant of
gukumbura (ye) - to be lonesome for, miss

Note: In the African thinking, inkuba is a big animal, or being, living in the sky. They usually say, “Inkuba yakubise umuntu,” not umurabyo as we would expect. This is because they think the animal did it.

231. Direct quotations with -ti. This little word sort of takes the place of quotation marks, and often is not translated at all. On the other hand, it may be the main verb, in which case it is translated “(he) said,” or “says,” as the case may be. It is followed by the exact words of the speaker.

Yavuze ati Ni mugende, nzabonana namwe (you) ejo - He said, “Go, I will see you tomorrow.”

-ti always has the regular verb prefixes: mvuga nti, uvuga uti, avuga ati, etc.


The change-down rule does not affect -ti. e.g. Igicucu kiravuga, kiti - the fool says...

"What did you say?” may be: Uti iki? or just: Uti?

232. a) Indirect quotations are usually introduced by ko, with the verbs following subject to rules for dependent clauses. Yavuze ko adashaka abakozi benshi - he said that the doesn’t want many workmen.
b) *Ngo* may introduce either a direct or an indirect quotation. In this use it does not require rules for dependent clauses.

Direct: Yavuze ngo Tugende - He said, “Let’s go.”
Indirect: Yavuze ngo uyu muntu ni we wishye ya nyamaswa - He said that this man is the one who killed that animal.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The fool says, “There is no God.” 2. Tell the people that the doctor will come tomorrow to examine those who are sick. 3. This man says that there was much rain and thunder and lightning at his place in the night. 4. The rich man said, “All my people must come to work tomorrow.” 5. The white man who went to Europe (Buraya) says that he is very lonesome for the Banyarwanda. 6. Did you hear me when I said that it hailed (= hail fell) near Kibuye? 7. The shepherds said, “Wild animals killed three sheep in the night.” 8. The deaf man went to the doctor and said, “Wouldn’t you try to heal me?” 9. The young girls said that they didn’t have any grudge, although their older sisters reproved them very strongly (= much). 10. The old man stood in the doorway of his house and said, “Don’t enter my house.”

**LESSON 115. Prepositional Suffixes vocabulary**

guhiga (ze) - to hunt kubyuka (tse) - to get up (esp. from bed)
irkiraro - bridge (large) umugogo - small bridge (poles across)
igicucu - shade, shadow

Note: The word for “shadow” or “shade” is just the same as the word for “fool”, but the context will usually make it clear.

233. -ho. This suffix is used in many greetings, which you already know.

Mwaramutseho - good morning
Muraho? Yego turaho.- Hello. (and response)
Muriho? Yego turiho - (same as muraho)
Mwiriweho? - good afternoon (or evening)
Muiririrweho - goodbye (when expecting to meet again same day)
Muraramuweho - goodbye (after noon, and. expecting to meet next day)
234. **-ho.** Apart from the greetings given above, in general one might say that **-ho** attached to the verb is used like the preposition **ku.** It is attached to the verb when the preposition **ku** governs an object pronoun in the verb, or when the thought of **ku** is expressed without a noun following. e.g. Washyize igitabo ku meza? Yee, nagishyizeho. - Did you put the book on the table? Yes, I put it there (meaning “on it.”) Yesu yadukuyeoho ibyaha - Jesus took away our sins (from us).

**-ho** attached to a passive verb governs the subject of the verb. e.g. Twakuweho ibyaha byacu - Our sins have been taken away (lit. we have been taken away from our sins).

235. **-yo.** This suffix means “there,” in reference to a place previously mentioned. **-ho** is usually used for a small place, such as on table, chair, etc., while **-yo** is for a location, such as kraal, hill, town, etc. e.g. Nzasubirayo vuba - I shall return there soon. (place previously mentioned) Yavuyeyo - he came from here.

236. **-mo.** This suffix is used for **mu,** as **-ho** is used for **ku,** and usually governs an object in the verb, or is used when no object of **mu** is named.

Sukamo amazi - pour water into it.
Kuramo ifu - take flour out of it.
Ni muvemo - come out of it.

(These examples all imply that the thing containing the water, flour, etc. is already referred to or known. One can also insert an object pronoun for the container:
Uyisukemo amazi - pour water into it (pail). This same form may be used with **-ho.** Pointing to a chair, one might say, “Uyishyireho imyenda” - put the clothes on it.

**-rimo** (**-ri** + **-mo**) means “contains”. e.g. Isandugu irimo amafaranga - the box contains francs.

These suffixes may be attached to a verb of any tense or form and do not in any way change the form of the verb itself. For past tenses the verb has its regular past suffix followed by the attached prepositional suffix. The addition of these suffixes brings the accent onto the syllable just preceding them: Sukamo amazi.

In speaking the **-o** usually elides wth a following vowel, or with **-ho** and **-mo** it Changes to **w** before **a,** and **e,** and is dropped before **u.**

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. There is much wood in the fire; take some out. 2. Tell the people who are in the school that they must come out of it. 3. I want to go to Cyangugu. All right (nuko) I will send you there soon to take a letter. 4. Is the meat on the table in the kitchen? I put it there this morning. 5. Are there white potatoes in the garden? Yes, there are. 6. We want to go in this path, but there are cows in it. Take them out of it. 7. We have long benches (chairs) in the church and many people sit on them. 8. A workman was splitting wood. His axe got caught (was caught) in the tree and he can’t take it out. 9. Did the girls go to the valley to work this morning? Yes, but they came from there at noon. 10. What do you have in your tall basket? I have some peas. Take them out and show them to me.

LESSON 116. Ki and Umuki

Vocabulary

ubwoko - race, nation, people, kind  umumaraika (Sw.) - angel

gutera (ijwi) hejuru - to shout, call out  gusiga - to leave

gusiga - to anoint, rub on, paint

237. **Ki**, meaning “What kind of?” is an invariable adjective which always follows the noun it modifies. Also the noun loses its initial vowel. Sometimes this indicates wonder or astonishment.

Iki ni gitabo ki? - what sort of book is this?
Uyu ni muntu ki? - what kind of person is this?
Ubwoko bwe ni bwoko ki? - Whatever kind of race is his? (astonishment)

Ki is also used in greetings like this: Amakuru ki? - what’s the news? To which one replies: Ni meza - it’s good (news).

238. **Umuki** is a declinable pronoun usually preceded by **ni**. It means “what kind of?”, in the sense of nationality, genus, etc. However, it is not used much, except in expressions like the following:

Ibi ni ibiki? - what sort of things are these?
Utu ni uduki? - whatever are these little things?
Aka ni agaki? - what is this?

The prefixes of this word are those of the nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>umuki</th>
<th>abaki</th>
<th>uruki</th>
<th>inki</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>umuki</td>
<td>imiki</td>
<td>agaki</td>
<td>uduki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inki</td>
<td>inki</td>
<td>ubuki</td>
<td>amaki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igiki</td>
<td>ibiki</td>
<td>uguki</td>
<td>amaki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iriki</td>
<td>amaki</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
239. There is also: ni iki?, meaning “what?” showing absolute ignorance of the nature of the thing. Now note these three forms given in this lesson:

Swahili ni rurimi ki? - what kind of language is Swahili?
Swahili ni iki? - what is Swahili? (people, language, thing)
Ibi ni ibiki? - whatever are these?

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. You have many books. What kind are they? 2. Did you hear what this man said? What sort of man is he? 3. What is “umumaraika?” 4. What sort of flowers are those? 5. What kind of dish is that from which you took out food? 6. What kind of clothes did you leave at home? 7. I saw the doctor rubbing medicine on that man. What kind of illness does he have? 8. What are pincher ants? We don’t have any in our country. 9. What kind of nails does the fundi want me to bring? (= that I bring). 10. Whatever kind of a hat is that? Where did you get it (= take it from)?

LESSON 117. Ka Tense

Vocabulary

guhaga (ze) - to eat a lot, be satisfied   gutinyua (tse) - to dare, be fearless
kwifuzwa (je) - to covet, want very much   gukinga (nze) - to close (door)
gukingura (ye) - to open (door)   kubiba (bye) - to plant (small seeds)

240. a) The -ka- tense is usually used for the purpose of connecting verbs when the action between is very close, in fact, the second action is a natural result of the first one. It is subject to the change-down rule. It is primarily used for a series of habitual happenings in past and present; in a series of conditionals; and in a series in a dependent clause except where there is subjunctive or narrative tenses (see lessons 123 and 124). For the negative where a -ka- would be expected, use the negative subjunctive. Also, -ka- may he used in a series of future happenings, by putting -za- after it e.g. Bakwiriye kugenda bakazahembwa. Atera imbuto zikamera, zigakura, zikera imbuto - he plants the seeds and they sprout and grow and bear fruit.

b) A -ka- verb always implies the tense of the verb preceding it. The first verb of the sentence or account sets the tense and mood for the -ka- verbs following. -ka- may be translated “and”, or may not be translated.
Exercises: (Some of these sentences are taken from Scripture, but have been adapted to the vocabulary you have studied.)

I. Translate into English:

1. Umuntu abiba imbuto, zimwe zikagwa mu nzira, inyoni zikaza zikazirya. 2. Ubwami bwo mu ijuru busa n’umusemburo (is like leaven); umugore akawufata akawuhisha mu ngero (measures) eshatu z’ifu. 3. Herode yafashe Yohana, akamuboha akamushyira mu nzu y’imbohe (prisoners). 4. Dawidi yinjiye mu nzu y’Imana akarya imitsima ikwiriye kuribwa n’abatambyi (priests) basa, akayiha n’abandi bari kumwe (with) na we. 5. Abandi ni bo bumva ijambo ry’Imana bakaryemera bakera imbuto ryinshi. 6. Ijwi rivugira mu ijuru riti Ni wowe (you are) mwana wanjye nkunda, nkakwishimira. 7. Izo mu nzira, abo ni bo bamara kwumva (when they have heard), uwo mwanya Satani akaza, agakuramo iryo jambo ry’Imana imbere y’abantu mukababwira ko bakwiriye kwihana mukabigisha inzira y’agakiza. 10. Icyo mbifuriza (prep. form) ni uko muhaga mu by’Imana, maze mugatinyuka kubimenyesha abandi kugira ngo na bo (they too) bahage.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. A man planted seeds and he went and slept and in the morning he got up and looked at his garden. 2. The people began to come and they brought the sick and asked Jesus to heal them. 3. I want you all to hear me (= that you hear) and do what I say. 4. You know that those who rule tell people to work and they want to be obeyed (obey = kwumvira). 5. I remember your tears and I am lonesome to see you and I want to talk with you (namwe). 6. In times to come (= that will come) people will throw away their faith and will put their hearts on things of earth and they will go astray. 7. My friend wrote me a letter and told me his news and asked me to write to him.

LESSON 118. Some Adverbs; The -racya- Tense

Vocabulary is included in the grammar. This lesson is for the purpose of giving you some of the common adverbs. You already know many of them.

241. Adverbs of manner:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kinyarwanda</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cyane</td>
<td>very, much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neza</td>
<td>well, nicely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuba</td>
<td>soon, recently, quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubusa</td>
<td>in vain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gusa</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nabi</td>
<td>badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buhoro (or, buhoro-buhoro)</td>
<td>gently, slowly, slightly, so-so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rwose</td>
<td>altogether, completely, very much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: **ubusa** (derived from gusa), besides meaning “in vain” or “nothing”, can also mean empty or naked. Igikombe kirimo ubusa - the cup is empty (contains nothing) umwana agenda yambaye ubusa - the child is naked, goes naked.

242. Adverbs of place:

hepfo - below, lower down

hejuru - up, above, on top
haruguru - higher up, in an inner room  hagati - in the middle, midst of
hafi - near                         kure - far
hino - on this side (Of river, valley, road)(if near) hiry - on that side, far side of something, but this side of river
hakuno - on this side of river, valley, road hakurya - on the other side of river, valley, road
imbere - in front of, inside of      inyuma - behind, outside of
hanze - outside (of house) out doors aha, hano - here (this very spot)
hariya - over there                ino - here (this place or district)
ahandi - elsewhere

Note 1: Be careful in using imbere and inyuma. They are often used just the opposite of the way we expect. For example, in the number 124, we would say that the number 4 is behind, or after, 2, but an African would say that it is imbere. What we consider the front of a house the Africans often call inyuma. In placing things on a shelf, we would say that the things at the back are behind the others. Africans would say they are imbere because they are further inside. Learn from them how to use these two words correctly.

Note 2: All the words in par. 242 from hepfo to inyuma, inclusive, must be followed by ya (or in case of a pronoun, by the possessive with the y prefix) if an object follows. e.g. Imbere y’umuhungu - in front of the boy. inyuma ye - behind him

243. -racya- tense. This is inserted between the personal prefix and the present stem (or with statives the past stem), and it means “still”. In the negative it is “no longer”. The dependent form has the meaning of “while” with no introductory conjunction necessary. Here is the conjugation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I am still working</th>
<th>we are still working</th>
<th>you are still working</th>
<th>you are still working</th>
<th>he is still working</th>
<th>they are still working</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ndacyakora</td>
<td>turacyakora</td>
<td>uracyakora</td>
<td>muracyakora</td>
<td>aracyakora</td>
<td>baracyakora</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is also used with the verb -ri. e.g. Mariya aracyari hana - Mary is still here.

In the negative and in dependent clauses the -racya- changes to -ki (this is subject to the change-down rule). Paulo ntakiza kwigishwa - Paul no longer (does not still) comes to learn. Ntacyiga (ki before a vowel becomes cy) - he no longer learns.

Dependent: Agihinga avugana n’abandi - while he’s hoeing, he talks with others.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The birds are above the trees. 2. There are five men behind me. 3. The bricks are on the ground near the house. 4. The rich man’s kraal is on this side of the valley. 5. Everywhere the people are planting seeds now because the rains (use sing.) are beginning. 6. Gahungu is still asking us for work, although we told him many times that we have none. 7. We no longer covet the things of earth because we have been saved. 8. Is that blind man still here? No, he is no longer here, he went to Burundi. 9. The fundis are still building that new school on the other side of the river. 10. I am no longer a child, I have grown up and I don’t learn in school any more (no longer).

LESSON 119. More Adverbs

244. Adverbs of time:

none - now (in sense of today)  
ubu - now  
ubu nyine, ubu ngubu - right now  
kenshi - often  
kangahe? - how often? how many times?  
iminsi yose - always  
maze, rero - then, after that  
kare - early  
ubwo nyine - at that very time  
kera - long ago, far in the future  
ubundi - at some other time  
bukeye, bukeye bw’aho - the next day  
ejo - yesterday, tomorrow  
ejobundi - day before yesterday, day after tomorrow  
mbere - before (as to time)  
nyuma - after (as to time)  
aha - when, where (as conj.), there

Note: mberे and nyuma when preceding and governing a noun or pronoun must be followed by ya. Nyuma y’ibyo - after those things.

245. Miscellaneous adverbs:

iburyo - at the right  
iruhande - beside, at the sides  
ahari, yenda, wenda - perhaps  
nuko rero - so then  
kumwe - together with (referring to people; followed by na)  
by’ukuri, mu by’ukuri - truly, really  
ibumoso - at the left  
imuhira - at home  
nuko - thus, therefore, so  
hamwe - together, in unison, at the same place  
nka - like, approximately, about

Note: The first three words here are always followed by the possessive, if anything follows which is governed by that word. e.g. iburyo bwe - at his right side. iruhande rw’inzira - beside the path

Exercises:
I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. Go to take that letter right now. 2. Perhaps we shall see our friends tomorrow. 3. One day the boys learned well, but the next day some were absent. 4. There were two animals beside the path. 5. After these things, the man tried to hide; then some children saw him. 6. I always like to sit near the teacher so that I hear everything he says. 7. Sometimes we are tempted to doubt God’s Word, but Jesus enables us (causes us to be able) to defeat Satan. 8. The sower (umubibyi) planted the seed and some fell beside the path and the birds ate them. 9. Often the children like to play (prep. form) together beside the school. While they are playing they chat. 10. The baby is still sleeping in the bed which is at the right of his mother’s bed. Don’t waken him.

LESSON 120. Miscellaneous Expressions

Vocabulary

umusabirizi - beggar intege - strength
indrege nke - weakness umupastori - pastor
gutashya (hije) - to send, take greetings gusobanura (ye) - to explain, interpret

Note: gutashya is usually used like this: Ndabatashya - I greet you. Or, Untahirize abandi - greet the others for me.

246. There are nouns formed by prefixing umunya- to a noun giving a characteristic of a person. You have already seen this in the word: umunyabyaha - sinner.

Here are a few others:

umunyeshuri - pupil (person of school). Observe that sometimes a and i contract to e.
umunyabwenge - a wise person
umunyantege nke - a weak person

Note in the last example that an adjective may follow the noun agreeing with it, though the word as a whole is first class. e.g. abanyantege nke bamwe - some weak people This same construction may be used with ikinya-, referring to a thing:

ikinyabwoya - a hairy caterpillar (lit. a hairy thing)
ikinyantege nke - a weak thing
247. A noun may be used to describe another noun by using the possessive particle between the two. This is one more way of expressing our English adjectives.

umusabirizi w’impumyi - a blind beggar
umwana w’umuhungu - a boy baby

24B. Suffix -nyinye. This means “itself” or “alone” or “the same,” “the very one.” Ni icyo gitabo nyine - that’s the very book.

This may be attached to any pronoun:

wenyine - you, or he, alone  bonyine - they themselves
twenyine - we ourselves, alone mwenyine - you yourselves

Also, with pronouns of other classes:

ryonyine: Ijambo ry’Imana ryonyine - the Word of God itself.
cya giti dOnyine - that very tree

Another similar expression is:

aha ngaha - right here
ubu ngubu - right now
ibi ngibi - these very ones.

249. There is also the form ubwanjye, meaning “myself” (and: ubwawe, ubwe, ubwabo, ubwayo, etc.). But note the difference: Nabikoze ubwanjye - I did it myself (it was my idea) Nabikoze jyenyine - I did it myself (no one helped me)

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. The pupils (use construction in par. 246) will come back to school day after tomorrow. 2. The Word of God itself has power to speak in the hearts of people. 3. Some wise men went to visit (i.e., look at) the baby Jesus. 4. The teacher’s wife gave birth to a baby girl. 5. I will greet our people for you (pl.). 6. A merciful person (use form in 246) is kind (= does nicely) to others. 7. Did you catch the leopard in a trap by yourself? 8. Lying and stealing are shameful habits (use form in 247). 9. Medicine is a valuable thing (= thing of value) because it heals sicknesses of
many kinds (uburyo). 10. This very bridge is the one that broke (= died) the time we went to Kibuye,

LESSON 121. More Miscellaneous Expressions

Vocabulary

gusa - to be like (no past) kwumvira (ye) - to obey
kwumviriza (je) - to listen to (as eavesdrop) gutega (ze) amatwi - to listen
kwuzura (ye) - to be full kwuzuza (ujuje) - to fill (tr.)

Note: kwuzura is usually used in the stative: igikombe kiruzuye - the cup is full, or, igikombe cyuzuye - a full cup.

Remember that verbs whose stems begin with u may omit the w in the infinitive: kuzura, kumvira, etc.

250. Na (and, with, by, also) and nka (like) join with the personal pronouns like this:

nanjye - and I nawe - and you (s.)
na we - and he, she natwe - and we
namwe - and you (pl.) na bo - and they
nkanjye - like me nkawe - like you (s.)
nka we - like him, her nkatwe - like us
nkamwe - like you (pl.) nka bo - like them

Note: nanjye could be “and me” as well as “and I” depending on its use in the sentence, and likewise the others. Also, it could be: “with me”, “by me”, “I also.” Observe that in the 3rd person both singular and plural it is written as two words and the a is short.

e.g. Ndashaka kubikora nanjye - I want to do it too.
Yabikoze na we - he did it too.

Other examples:

Bazajyana natwe - they will go with us.
Ameze nkanjye - he is like me.
Ubikore nawe - you do it, too.

This form is used with the pronouns of other classes as well:

Zana icyo gitabo na cyo - bring that book, too.

Another way to say the same thing is: Zana n’icyo gitabo.
251. **Gusa**, “to be like”, is always followed by **na**. It is used like any other verb, but it has no past forms. e.g. Umwana asa na se - the child is (or, looks) like his father. Notice the difference between **nka** and **gusa**.

Uyu mwana asa na se - this child is like (looks like) his father.
Zana isahane nk’iyi - bring a dish like this one.
Wa muhungu akora nk’umugabo - that boy works like a man.

Perhaps it could be explained this way: when “like” is used with the verb “to be” the verb **gusa** is used; when “like” refers to appearance, but the verb “to be” is not used, the word **nka** is used; when the similarity has to do with action the word **nka** is used. The word **kumera** followed by **nka** is used when the similarity is in character, nature, habits. e.g. Umwana ameze nka se - the child is like his father (in character, habits).

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. I have seen no others who obey their teachers like you (pl.). 2. The hole is full of water. 3. Bring two other books like this one. 4. I know this child because she looks (is) like her mother. 5. Will you go with us to the market? 6. The pastor is an honorable person (use form in par. 246). We ought to listen to him. 7. We are ready (= have prepared ourselves, stative) to begin our journey. Bring your sleeping mats and your food (for the journey) too. 8. Are you (pl.) afraid to walk in the dark too? There’s nothing bad there. 9. Jesus was always kind (did nicely) to people. Let’s try to do like Him, and to obey Him. 10. You (pl.) have been patient (for) many hours. Are you tired? I’m tired, too.

**LESSON 122. Summary of Tenses**

**Vocabulary**

- kuvuna (nnye) - to break (tr.)
- gutwika (tse) - to burn up (tr.)
- kuvunika (tse) - to break (int.)
- gusiba (bye) - to erase
- kunanirwa (niwe) - to be tired, unable to do something
- guhumeka (tse) - to breathe
- umubare - number

**Note 1:** **kunanirwa** is usually used in the stative, and very often means physical weariness. It is also used like this: a person has been trying to solve a problem and is unable, so he says, “**Ndananiwe**” - I’ve tried and can’t. Or often the transitive form
is used: **birannaniye** - it has defeated me. (Usually the 2 n’s are not written, but it is done here to show you the 1st pers. sing. as object.)

Note 2: **kuvuna** and **kuvunika** are used of breaking a slender thing, such as a stick, bone, etc., while **kumena** is used for “to break” other things. However, while in English we would say, “I broke my arm,” in Kinyarwanda the transitive is not used unless it was done intentionally. One would say, “**Navunitse ukuboko.**” Observe that it is not: **ukuboko kwavunitse**. People often say this when the bone is not actually broken, but it is just a sprain.

**252. A.** Here is a summary of imperative forms. Some of these you have not been taught before, so you need to learn them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Future today</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Immediate present</td>
<td>genda</td>
<td>nimugende</td>
<td>mgenda</td>
<td>mwigenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>wigenda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future today</td>
<td>ugende</td>
<td>wugenda, ntugende</td>
<td>mwekugenda, ntimugende</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>wekugenda, ntugende</td>
<td></td>
<td>mwekugenda, ntimugende</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far future</td>
<td>uzagende</td>
<td>muzagende</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>wekuzagenda, ntuzagende</td>
<td></td>
<td>mwekuzagenda, ntimuzagende</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“never” imperative: insert -**ka**- **Ntukabeshye** - never lie.

**B. Summary of suffixes and other stem changes:**

- passive: **-bonwa** to be seen
- prepositional: **-bonera** to see at, for
- causative: **-bonesha** to cause to see
- reflexive: **-ibona** to see oneself
- reciprocal: **-bonana** to see each other
- prep. suffix: **-bonayo** to see there (also, -bonaho, -mo)

**C. Here is a summary of all the tenses you have studied, with the verbs given in the 3rd person singular.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Prefixless PR.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>-RA- PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>agenda</td>
<td>agende</td>
<td>azagenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular verb</td>
<td>aragenda</td>
<td>agenda</td>
<td>agende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>ntagenda</td>
<td>ntagende</td>
<td>ntazagenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowel-stem verb</td>
<td>ntiyerekareka</td>
<td>ntiyerekereka</td>
<td>ntazerekareka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular verb</td>
<td>aragiiye</td>
<td>yaragiiye</td>
<td>yagendaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>ntagiiye ntiyagiiye</td>
<td>ntiyagendaga</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowel-stem verb</td>
<td>arereteke</td>
<td>yereteke</td>
<td>yerekaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular verb</td>
<td>ntiyerekereke</td>
<td>ntiyerekereke</td>
<td>ntiyerekereke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-KA- TENSE  NOT-YET TENSE  -RACYA-  CONDITIONAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular verb</th>
<th>akagenda</th>
<th>aracyagenda</th>
<th>yagenda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>ntaragenda</td>
<td>ntakigenda</td>
<td>ntiyagenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowel-stem verb</td>
<td>akereka</td>
<td>aracyereka</td>
<td>yakwereka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. vowel-stem</td>
<td>ntarereka</td>
<td>ntacyereka</td>
<td>ntiyakwereka</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:


II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

1. This woman’s husband died (long ago). 2. Just now we drank lots of water because we were very thirsty. 3. I am defeated in working (to work) these numbers. Help me. 4. This morning the men will burn all the grass on the hill. 5. Yesterday two people came to the dispensary who had broken their legs. 6. Why are you erasing all those words? You must write them again. 7. The children are beating the dog with a stick. Take the stick and break it. 8. Who didn’t use a cup to drink with? 9. Before you fill these pails wash them well with soap. 10. Wouldn’t you try to take the children on the narrow path? 11. Don’t burn those papers (right now) because I want them.

**LESSON 123. The Narrative Tenses**

**Vocabulary**

gusimbuka (tse) - to jump  
gucukura (ye) - to dig a hole

ubukwe - wedding

253. The narrative is not a new tense, but another use of tense already learned. As the name indicates it is used in recounting something which has happened. It may be a long story or just a sentence or two. The two main tenses used in a narration are the -ra- present and the prefixless present, even though the time is past. Often the first verb in the narration will be past, indicating the time, then it continues with present form verbs. Here is an important rule to remember: In the narrative a main verb is in the -ra- present tense if nothing follows within that main clause except cyane or ati (or other forms of -ti); if something else follows, the prefixless present is used. It is not necessary to use a word for “and” in most cases in the narrative. Before ngo, or ko the -ra- present is used since these words introduce another clause. Before an infinitive the prefixless present is used. e.g. Umugabo yabonye
The man saw a leopard and he was afraid and fled; he arrived in the house and hid.

As you read in the Gospels you will observe the use of the narrative throughout. Try reading Mark 1:9, 11, and other passages.

**Exercises:**

I. Translate into English:

Adamu yari afite (he had) abana babiri; amazina yabo yari Kayini na Abeli. Umunsi urnwe bazanira Imana ibitambo (sacrifices). Abeli ntiyaburaga gukura igitambo mu ntama ze, ati Imana ntiyemera igitambo kidafite amaraso. Nta kintu gikura ikibi mu mutima w’umuntu keretse (except) arnaraso. Ariko Kayini, mukuru we, ntiyazanaga ikintu gifite amaraso, ariko azana ibivuye mu mirima ye gusa, arabitanga. (For negatives, see next lesson.)

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

Then God accepted Abel, but he refused the other. Then Cain was angry and he killed Abel. God called him, saying, “Where is your brother?” Cain said, “Do I know? Do I watch him?” Then God punished him and cursed (kuvuma) him. I tell you that the blood of Jesus is that which washes the hearts of people.

III. Translate into English:


**LESSON 124. Narrative Continued**

**Vocabulary**

kwishyura (ye) - to pay a debt  
gusana (nnye) - to mend, repair (esp, woven things)

urnugaragu - servant (male)  
umuja - servant (female)

guhimbaza (je) - to praise  
gusubiza (je) - to answer (as question, letter), return (tr.) (as borrowed object)

**254. Other tenses in the narrative:**

1) Most dependent clauses within the narrative use the prefixless past (that is: personal prefix + verb stem with past suffix): e.g. ngiye, ugiye, agiye, etc. When reading narrative and you see this tense you will know it is a dependent clause. If there is no other introductory word, it is very often translated “when”, or as a participle: “going.” e. g. Avuye mu rusengero aragenda ashaka Yohana avugana na we - When he came (or, coming) from the church he went and found John and talked with him.

2) A direct quotation takes whatever tense was used in the original statement. e.g. Abantu baraza baramubaza, bati Uzajya i Yerusalemu? Arabasu biza ati Oya, sinjyayo ubu. - The people came and asked him, “Will you go to Jerusalem?” He answered them, “No, I am not going there now.”
3) Sometimes within the narrative there is a statement that refers to a characteristic of a person or a habitual action or attitude that is not really a part of the events, only telling something about a person. This verb then takes the ordinary past prefix but the present stem + -ga. e.g. yakundaga. It will have a -ra- in it also if nothing follows it in the clause except cyane or ati. e.g. Kera hari umugabo ufite abahungu babiri. Umwe yakundaga gukora, undi akanebwa. Se arabahamagara, arababwira, ati Ni mugende mukore mu murima. - Long ago there was a man who had two sons. One liked to work and the other was lazy. Their father called them and told them, “Go to work in the garden.” You will observe that here “to like to work” and “to be lazy” are character traits, not a part of the series of actions, thus they have the tenses you see above. 

4) The negative in the narrative, whether anything follows or not, is: sinabonaga, ntiwabonaga, ntivabonaga, etc. (neg. + pers. pref. + past prefix + present stem + -ga.)

5) There is a tendency to avoid using the word nta in the narrative, so you will find expressions like this: Ntihagiraga umuntu ubimenya - no one knew it (lit. there was not a person who knew it, instead of: nta muntu yabimenyaga.

There are other tenses used within the narrative sometimes, but these are the ones you need to know now.

Exercises:

I. Translate into English:

Bamaze kubohesha Yohana, Yesu ajya i Galilaya, avuga Ubutumwa Bwiza bw’Imana, ati Igihe kirasohoye (arrived), ubwami bw’Imana buri hafi; mwihane mwemere Ubutumwa Bwiza. Aciyi i ruhande rw’inyanja y’i Galilaya, abona Simoni na Andereya mwene (son of) se baterera urushundura (net) mu nyanja, kuko bari abarobyi (fishermen). Yesu arababwira ati Nimunkurikire, nzabagira abarobyi b’abantu. Uwo mwanya basiga inshundura, baramukurikira. Agiyi imbere hato abona Yakobo mwene, Zebedayo na Yohana mwene se, na bo bari mu bwato basana inshundura. Uwo mwanya arabahamagara, basiga se Zebedayo mu bwa to hamwe n’abakozi be, baramukurikira. Mariko 1:14-18.

II. Translate into Kinyarwanda:

Long ago a woman named Hannah gave birth to a son and she named him Samuel. When three years were finished she took him to the church in order that he might work for God. Every year she went to see him and gave him clothes. After (hashize) a few years, one night God called him. Samuel thought that Eli called him. He ran and said, “Did you call me?” Eli said, “No, I didn’t call you, go back to bed.” After three times Eli understood that God was calling Samuel. He told Samuel that he ought to answer, “Yes, Lord, your servant hears.” God called again and Samuel answered. Then God showed him the punishment he was going to send (just use future of “send”, nothing for “going to”) on the sons of Eli.

LESSON 125. Review

I. Questions:

1. How is the word for “some” formed?
2. What part of speech in Kinyarwanda is often used to express descriptive adjectives (other than adjectives)?
3. How is the past of reduplicated verbs formed?
4. What word usually introduces a direct quotation?
5. What words may introduce an indirect quotation?
6. Give three common prepositional suffixes attached to verbs and give an example of each. Translate your examples.
7. What is the difference between ki and umuki?
8. What is the -ka- tense used for?
9. What must always follow adverbs such as hafi, inyuma, etc. if they have an object?
10. Explain the difference between gusa and nka.
11. What are the two main tenses used in narrative and what determines which tense a verb will be?
12. How can you recognize a “when” clause or other dependent clause within the narrative?
13. What determines the tense used in a direct quotation within the narrative?
14. What tense or form is used in the narrative to express habitual past action?
15. How is the negative of the narrative formed? Illustrate.

II. Translate into English:

Imana ibwira Samweli ngo asige Sauli abe umwami, iti Azakiza abantu banjye, kuko nabonye ibyago byabo, numvise uguisenga kwabo. Sauli yari mwiza kandi yari umunyamwete. Yari afite umuhungu w’umusore witwaga Yonatani, yasaga na se akagira umutima nk’uwe; Umunsi umwe Sauli ajya mu mujyi Samweli yarimo; Samweli aramuhamagura amuha icyubahiro. Bukeye bari bonyine amusiga amavuta mu mutwe; aravuga ati Ubu Uwiteka (the Lord - the Eternal) aragusize; uzaba umwami w’abantu be, uzabakiza abanzi. Sauli atashye ntiyavugaga ibyabaye (what happened). Umwuka (Spirit) w’Imana amuzaho. Ukwezi gushize abanzi bakikiza (surround) umujyi umwe; abari muri wo bahamagara abandi Bisirayeli bose ngo babatabare. Sauli arabajyana batsinda abanzi.

III. Vocabulary Quiz:

1. kubyibuha
2. guhora
3. gusubiza
4. kwuzuza
5. umurabyo
6. igufwa
7. gutashya
8. umutwaro
9. guhaga
10. kunyeganyega
11. kunanirwa
12. hakurya
13. ahari
14. ibyago
15. ikiraro
16. gutera hejuru
17. guhimbaza
18. kubyuka
19. ikimenyetso
20. haruguru
21. to deceive
22. to choose
23. to be like
24. to be narrow
25. to answer
26. to be lonesome
27. to be rich
28. to open door
29. to explain
30. to be fearless
31. to greet
32. on the left
33. to rub on
34. to covet
35. to burn up
36. together
37. to protect
38. shade
39. to be for
40. white
41. obey